BEING

A DISCOURSE

OF

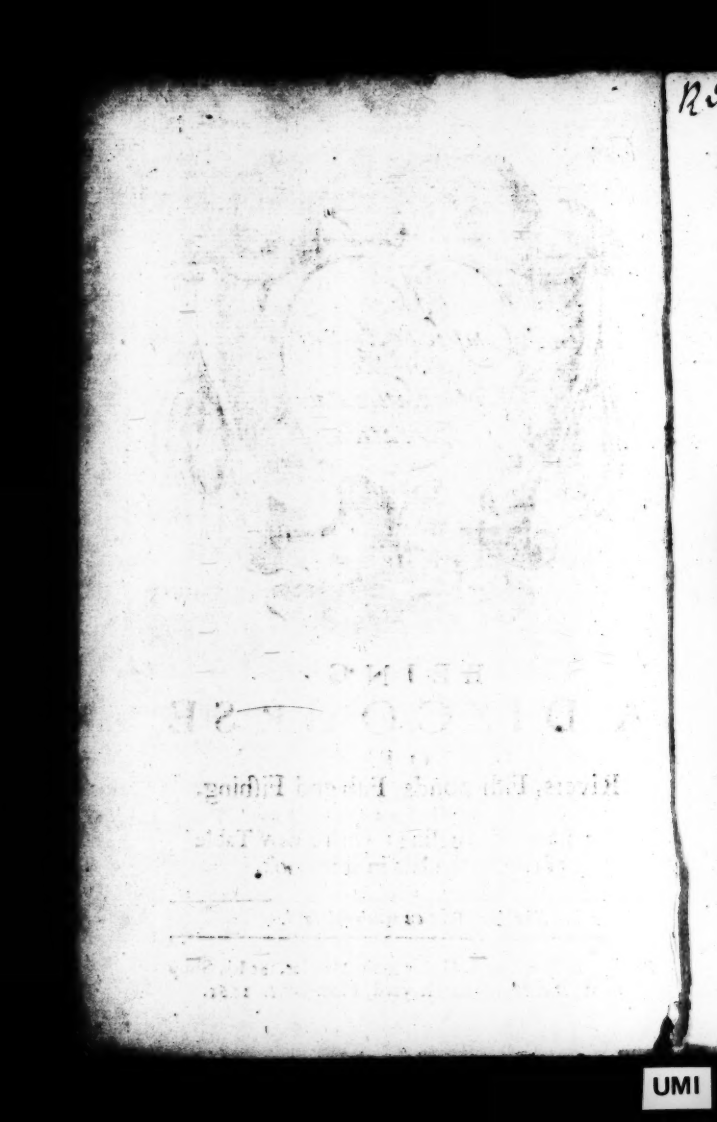
Rivers, Fish-ponds, Fish and Fishing.

To which is added

The Laws of Angling: with a new Table of the Particulars in this Book.

The third Edition much enlarged.

London, Printed by *J. G.* for *Rich. Marriot*, at his Shop in St. *Dunstans* Church yard, *Fleet-street*. 1661.



To the Right Worſhipfull

JOHN OFFLEY

Of MADELY *Manor in the County of* Stafford, *Eſq;*

My moſt honoured Friend.

SIR,

I Have made ſo ill uſe of your former favours, as by them to be encouraged to intreat, that they may be enlarged to the *patronage* and *protection* of this Book; and I have put on a modeſt confidence, that I ſhall not be deny'd, becauſe it is a Diſcourſe of *Fiſh* and *Fiſhing*, which you know ſo well, and both love and practiſe ſo much.

You are aſſured (though there be

ignorant men of another belief) that *Angling* is an *Art*; and you know that *Art* better than others; and, that this is truth, is demonſtrated by the fruits of that pleaſant labour which you enjoy when you purpoſe to give reſt to your mind, and diveſt your ſelf of your more ſerious buſineſs, and (which is often) dedicate a day or two to this *Recreation*.

At which time if *common Anglers* ſhould attend you, and be eye-witneſſes of the ſucceſs, not of your *fortune* but your *skill*, it would doubtleſs beget in them an emulation to be like you, and that emulation might beget an induſtrious diligence to be ſo: but I know it is not attainable by common capacities. And there be now many men of great *wiſdom, learning* and *experience*, that love and practiſe

ctiſe this *Art*, that knovv I ſpeak the truth.

Sir, this pleaſant curioſity of Fiſh and Fiſhing, (of which you are ſo great a Maſter) has been thought worthy the *pens* and *practiſes* of divers in other Nations, which have been reputed men of great *learning* and *wiſdom*, and amongſt thoſe of this Nation I remember Sir *Henry Wotton* (a dear lover of this Art) has told me that his intentions were to write a Diſcourſe of the *Art*, and in praiſe of *Angling*, and doubtleſs he had done ſo if death had not prevented him; the remembrance of which hath often made me ſorry, for if he had lived to do it, then the unlearned *Angler* had ſeen ſome better Treatiſe of this Art, a Treatiſe worthy his peruſal, which (though ſome have undertaken) I

could never yet see in English.

But mine may be thought as *weak* and as *unworthy* of common view; and I do here freely confesse, that I should rather excuse my self, than censure others, my own Discourse being liable to so many exceptions; against which you (Sir) might make this one, *That it can contribute nothing to your Knowledge.* And lest a longer Epistle may diminish your pleasure, I shall not adventure to make this Epistle any longer than to adde this following truth, *That I am really,*

SIR,

Your most affectionate Friend,

and most humble Servant,

Iz. Wa.

To all Readers of this Discourse, but especially to the honest *ANGLER*.

I Think fit to tell thee these following truths, That I did neither undertake, *nor* write, *nor* publish, *and much lesse* own *this Discourse to please my self: and having been too easily drawn to please others, as I propos'd not the gaining of credit by this undertaking, so I would not willingly lose any part of that to which I had a just title before I begun it, and therefore desire and hope, if I deserve not commendation, yet I may obtain pardon.*

And though this Discourse may be lyable to some exceptions, yet I cannot doubt but that most Readers may receive so much pleasure *or* profit *by it, as may make it worthy the time of their perusal, if they be not very busie men. And this is all the confidence that I can put on concerning the merit of what is here offered to their consideration and censure; and if the last prove too severe, I have a liberty, and am resolv'd to neglect it.*

And I wish the Reader *also to take notice, that in writing of it I have made my self a* recreation *of a* recreation; *and that it might prove so to him, and not read* dull *and* tediously, *I have in several places mixt* (not any scurrility, *but*) *some innocent, harmless mirth; of which, if thou be a severe sowre-complexion'd man, then I here disallow thee to be a competent judge; for* Divines *say,* There are offences given, and offences not given but taken.

And I am the willinger to justifie the pleasant part of it, because, though it is known I can be serious at seasonable times, yet the whole Discourse is, or rather was, a picture of my own disposition, especially in such dayes and times as I have laid aside business, and gone a fishing with honest Nat. *and* R. Roe; *but they are gone, and with them most of my pleasant hours, even as a shadow that passeth away, and returnes not.*

And next let me adde this, that he that likes not the book, should like the excellent picture of the trout, *and some of the other fish; which I may take a liberty to commend, because they concern not my self.*

Next let me tell the Reader, *that in that which is the more useful part of this* Discourse, *that is to say, the observations of the* nature, *and* breeding, *and* seasons, *and* catching of fish, *I am not so simple as not to know, but that a captious Reader may find exceptions against something said of some of these; and therefore I must intreat him to consider, that experience teaches us to know, that several Countries alter the time, and I think almost the manner of fishes breeding, but doubtless of their being in season; as may appear by three Rivers in* Munmouthshire, *namely* Severn, Wie *and* Usk, *where* Camden (Brit. f. 633.) *observes, that in the river* Wye Salmon *are in season from* Sept. *to* April, *and we are certain, that in* Thames *and* Trent, *and in most other rivers they be in season the 6. latter moneths.*

Now for the Art of catching *fish, that is to say, how to make a man that was none, to be an Angler*

by

by a book; he that undertakes it shall undertake a harder task, than Mr. Hales (*a most valiant and excellent Fencer*) *who in a printed book called* A private School of Defence, *undertook by it to teach that art or science, and was laugh'd at for his labor. Not but that many useful things might be learnt by that book, but he was laugh'd at, because that art was not to be taught by words, but practice: and so must Angling. And in this Discourse I do not undertake to say all that is known, or may be said of it, but I undertake to acquaint the Reader with many things that are not usually known to every Angler; and I shall leave gleanings and observations enough to be made out of the experience of all that love and practise this recreation, to which I shall encourage them. For* Angling *may be said to be so like the* Mathematicks, *that it can ne're be fully learnt; at least not so fully, but that there will still be more new experiments left for the trial of other men that succeed us.*

But I think all that love this game may here learn something that may be worth their money, if they be not poor and needy men; and in case they be, I then wish them to forbear to buy it; for I write not to get money, but for pleasure, and this Discourse boasts of no more; for I hate to promise much, and deceive the Reader.

And however it proves to him, yet I am sure I have found a high content in the search and conference of what is here offer'd to his view and censure: I wish him as much in the perusal of it, and so I might here take my leave, but will stay a little

and

and tell him, that whereas it is said by many, that in flye-fishing for a Trout *the Angler must observe his twelve several flies for the twelve moneths of the year; I say he that follows that rule, shall be as sure to catch fish, and be as wise as he that makes Hay by the fair dayes in an Almanack, and no surer; for those very flyes that use to appear about and on the water in one moneth of the year, may the following year come almost a moneth sooner or later, as the same year proves colder or hotter; and yet in the following Discourse I have set down the twelve flyes that are in reputation with many Anglers, and they may serve to give him some light concerning them. And he may note that there is in* Wales *and other Countries, peculiar* flyes, *proper to the particular place or Country; and doubtless, unless a man makes a flye to counterfeit that very flye in that place, he is like to lose his labour, or much of it: But for the generality, three or four* flies *neat and rightly made, and not too big, serve for a* Trout *in most rivers all the Summer. And for Winter* flie-fishing *it is as useful as an Almanack out of date. And of those (because as no man is born an artist so no man is born an angler) I thought fit to give thee this notice.*

When I have told the Reader, that in this third Impression there are many enlargements, gathered both by my own observation, and the communication of friends, I shall stay him no longer then to wish him a rainy evening to read this following Discourse; *and that (if he be an honest Angler)* the East wind may never blow when he goes a Fishing.

I. W.

To my dear Brother-in-law Mr. Iz. Walton, *upon his* Complete Angler.

Erasmus in his learned Colloquies
Has mixt some toyes, that by varieties
He might entice all Readers: for in him
Each *child* may wade, or tallest *giant* swim.
And such is this Discourse: there's none so low,
Or highly learn'd, to whom hence may not flow
Pleasure and information: both which are
Taught us with so much art, that I might swear
Safely, the choicest Critick cannot tell,
Whether your matchless judgment most excell
In *Angling* or its *praise*: where commendation
First charms, then makes an *art* a *recreation*.
'Twas so to me: who *saw* the chearful *Spring*
Pictur'd in every *meadow*, heard *birds* sing
Sonnets in every *grove*, saw *fishes* play
In the cool *crystal streams*, like *lambs* in *May*:
And they may play, till *Anglers* read this *book*;
But after, 'tis a wise *fish* scapes a *hook*.

Jo. Floud, Mr. of Arts.

To the Reader of the *Complete Angler*.

FIrst mark the Title well; my Friend that gave it
Has made it good; this book deserves to have it,
For he that views it with judicious looks,
Shall find it full of *art*, *baits*, *lines* and *hooks*.
The *world* the *river* is; both you and I,
And all mankind are either *fish* or *fry*:
If we pretend to reason, first or last
His baits will tempt us, and his hooks hold fast.

Plea-

Pleaſure or profit, either proſe or rhime,
If not at firſt, will doubtleſs take's in time.
Here ſits in ſecret bleſt *Theology*,
Waited upon by grave *Philoſophy*,
Both *natural* and *moral*; *Hiſtory*
Deck'd and adorn'd with flowers of *Poetry*;
The matter and expreſſion ſtriving which
Shall moſt excell in worth, yet not ſeem rich:
There is no danger in his *baits*, that *hook*
Will prove the ſafeſt, that is ſureſt took.
Nor are we caught alone, but (which is beſt)
We ſhall be wholſom, and be toothſom dreſt:
Dreſt to be fed, not to be fed upon;
And danger of a ſurfeit ere is none.
The ſolid food of ſerious Contemplation
Is ſauc'd here with ſuch harmleſs recreation,
That an *ingenuous* and *religious* mind
Cannot inquire for more than it may find
Ready at once prepar'd, either t'excite
Or ſatisfie a curious appetite.
More praiſe is due; for 'tis both poſitive
And truth, which once was interrogative,
And utter'd by the Poet then in jeſt,
Et piſcatorem piſcis amare poteſt.

C. H. Mr. of Arts.

To my dear Friend, Mr. Iz. Walton, *in praiſe of Angling, which we both love.*

DOwn by this ſmooth ſtreams wandring ſide,
Adorn'd and perfum'd with the pride
Of *Flora's* Wardrobe, where the ſhrill
Aerial Quire expreſs their skill,
Firſt in alternate melody,
And then in Chorus all agree.

Whilſt

Whilſt the charm'd fiſh, as extaſi'd
With ſounds, to his own throat deny'd,
Scorns his dull Element, and ſprings
I'th' air, as if his Fins were wings.
'Tis here that pleaſures ſweet and high
Proſtrate to our embraces lye.
Such as to Body, Soul or Name
Create no ſickneſs, ſin or ſhame.
Roſes not fenc'd with pricks grow here,
No ſting to th' Hony-bag is near.
But (what's perhaps their prejudice)
They difficulty want and price.
An obvious Rod, a twiſt of hayr,
With hook hid in an inſect, are
Engines of ſport, would fit the wiſh
O'th' Epicure, and fill his diſh.
In this cleer ſtream let fall a *Grub*,
And ſtraight take up a *Dace* or *Chub*.
I'th' mud your worm provokes a *Swig*,
Which being faſt, if it prove big,
The *Gotham* olly will be found
Diſcreet, e're ta'ne ſhe muſt be drown'd.
The *Tench* (Phyſician of the Brook)
In yon dead hole expects your hook,
Which having firſt your paſtime been,
Serves then for meat or medicine.
Ambuſh't behind that root doth ſtay
A *Pike*, to catch and be a prey.
The trecherous Quill in this ſlow ſtream
Betrayes the hunger of a *Bream*.
And at that nimbler Ford, (no doubt)
Your falſe flye cheats a ſpeckled *Trout*.
When you theſe creatures wiſely chuſe
To practiſe on, which to your uſe
Owe their creation, and when
Fith from your arts do reſcue men,
To plot, delude and circumvent,
Enſnare and ſpoil, is innocent.

Here

Here by these cryſtal ſtreams you may
Preſerve a Conſcience clear as they.
And when by ſullen thoughts you find
Your haraſſed, not buſied, mind
In ſable melancholy clad,
Diſtemper'd, ſerious, turning ſad;
Hence fetch your cure, caſt in your bait,
All anxious thoughts and cares will ſtraight
Fly with ſuch ſpeed, they'l ſeem to be
Poſſeſt with the *Hydrophobie*.
The waters calmneſs in your breſt,
And ſmoothneſs in your brow ſhall reſt.
Away with ſports of charge and noiſe,
Sweeter are cheap and ſilent joyes.
Such as *Actæons* game purſue,
Their fate oft makes the Tale ſeem true,
The ſick or ſullen *Hawk* to day
Flyes not; to morrow, quite away.
Patience and Purſe to Cards and Dice
Too oft are made a ſacrifice:
The Daughters dowre, th'inheritance
O'th' ſon, depend on one mad chance.
The harms and miſchiefs which th'abuſe
Of wine doth every day produce,
Make good the Doctrine of the *Turks*,
That in each grape a devil lurks.
And by yon fading ſapleſs tree,
'Bout which the *Ivye* twin'd you ſee,
His fate's foretold, who fondly places
His bliſs in womans ſoft embraces.
All pleaſures, but the Anglers, bring
I'th' tail repentance like a ſting.
Then on theſe banks let me ſit down,
Free from the toilſom Sword and Gown,
And pity thoſe that do affect
To conquer Nations, and protect.
My Reed affords ſuch true content,
Delights ſo ſweet and innocent,

As

As ſeldom fall unto the lot
Of Scepters, though they's *juſtly got.*
Tho. Weaver, Mr. of Arts.

To the Readers of my moſt ingenuous Friends Book, The Complete Angler.

He that both knew and writ the Lives of men,
Such as were once, but muſt not be agen:
Witneſs his matchleſs *Donne* and *Wotton*, by
Whoſe ayd he could their ſpeculations try:
He that convers'd with *Angels*, ſuch as were
Oulafworth and *Fe tly*, each a ſhining ſtar
Shewing the way to *Bethlem*; each a Saint;
Compar'd to whom our *Zealots* now but paint:
He that our pious and learn'd *Morley* knew,
And from him ſuck'd *wit* and *devotion* too;
He that from theſe ſuch excellencies fetch'd,
That *He* could tell how high and far they reach'd;
What learning this, what graces th'other had;
And in what ſev'ral dreſs each ſoul was clad;
Reader, this *HE*, this *Fiſherman* comes forth,
And in theſe Fiſhers weeds would ſhroud his worth.
Now his mute Harp is on a Willow hung,
With which, when finely touch't, and fitly ſtrung,
He could friends paſſions for theſe times allay;
Or chain his fellow-*Anglers* from their prey.
But now the muſick of his pen is ſtill,
And he ſits by a brook watching a quill:
Where with a fixt eye and a ready hand,
He ſtudies firſt to hook, and then to land
Some *Trout*, or *Pearch*, or *Pike*; and having done,
Sits on a bank, and tells how this was won,
And that eſcap'd his hook; which with a wile
Did eat the bit, and Fiſherman beguile.
Thus whilſt ſome vex they from their lands are thrown,
He joyes to think the waters are his own;

As

And

And, like the *Dutch*, he gladly can agree
To live at peace now, and have *fishing* free.
April 3. 1650. *Edw. Pawl*, Mr. of Arts.

To my dear Brother, Mr. Iz. Walton, *on his* Complete Angler.

THis Book is so like you, and you like it,
For harmless Mirth, Expression, Art and Wit,
That I protest ingenuously 'tis true,
I love this Mirth, Art, Wit, the Book and You.
Rob. Floud, C.

Charissimo amicissimoq; Fratri, Domino *Isaaco Walton*, Artis Piscatoriæ peritissimo.

UNicus est Medicus reliquorum piscis, & istis
Fas quibus est Medicum tangere, certa salus.
Hic typus est Salvatoris mirandus Iesu,
b *Litera mysterium quelibet hujus habet.*
Hunc cupio, hunc capias (bone frater Arundinis) ἰχθὺν ;
q *Solveret hic promta debita, teq; Deo.*
Piscis is est, & piscator, (mihi credito) qualem
Vel piscatorem piscis amare velit.

q Mat. 17 27. the last words of the Chapter.

b Ἰχθὺς *Piscis.*
I Ἰησοῦς *Jesus.*
χ Χριστὸς *Christus.*
θ Θεοῦ *Dei.*
υ Υἱὸς *Filius.*
σ σωτὴρ *Salvator.*

Henry Bagley, *Artium Magister.*

THE COMPLETE ANGLER, OR, The Contemplative Man's Recreation.

CHAP. I.

A Conference betwixt an Angler, *a* Falkner, *and a* Hunter, *each commending his Recreation.*

PISCATOR.
VENATOR.
AUCEPS.

Pisc. YOu are well overtaken, Gentlemen, a good morning to you both; I have ſtretched my legs up *Tottenham-hill* to overtake you, hoping your buſineſs may occaſion you towards *Ware* this fine freſh *May* morning.

Venat. Sir, I for my part ſhall almoſt anſwer your hopes, for my purpoſe is to drink my mornings draught at the *Thatcht Houſe* in *Hodſden*, and I think not to reſt till I come thither, where I have appointed a friend or two to meet me: but for this Gentleman that you ſee with me, I know not how far he intends his journey; he came ſo lately into my company, that I have ſcarce had time to ask him the queſtion.

Auceps. Sir, I ſhall by your favour bear you company as far as *Thebalds*, and there leave you, for then I turn up to a friends houſe who mews a Hawk for me, which I now long to ſee.

Venat. Sir, we are all ſo happy as to have a fine, freſh, cool morning, and I hope we ſhall each be the happier in the others company. And Gentlemen, that I may not loſe yours, I ſhall either abate or amend my pace to enjoy it; knowing that (as the Italians ſay) *Good company makes the way to ſeem the ſhorter.*

Auceps. It may do ſo Sir, with the help of good diſcourſe, which methinks we may promiſe from you that both look and ſpeak ſo cheerfully: and for my part I promiſe you, as an invitation to it, that I will be as free and open hearted, as diſcretion will allow me to be with ſtrangers.

Ven. And Sir, I promiſe the like.

Piſc.

Pisc. I am right glad to hear your answers, and in confidence you speak the truth, I shall put on a boldnesse to ask you Sir, Whether businesse or pleasure caused you to be so early up, and walk so fast, for this other Gentleman hath declared he is going to see a Hawk, that a friend mewes for him.

Ven. Sir mine is a mixture of both, a little businesse and more pleasure, for I intend this day to do all my businesse, and then bestow another day or two in hunting the *Otter*, which a friend that I go to meet, tells me, is much pleasanter then any other chase whatsoever; howsoever I mean to try it; for to morrow morning we shall meet a pack of Otter dogs of *noble Mr. Sadlers* upon *Amwell hill*, who will be there so early, that they intend to prevent the Sun-rising.

Pisc. Sir, my fortune has answered my desires, and my purpose is to bestow a day or two in helping to destroy some of those villanous vermin, for I hate them perfectly, because they love fish so well, or rather, because they destroy so much; indeed so much, that in my judgment all men that keep *Otter-dogs* ought to have pensions from the King to incourage them to destroy the very breed of those base *Otters*, they do so much mischief.

Ven. But what say you to the Foxes of the Nation, would not you as willingly have them

deſtroyed? for doubtleſſe they do as much miſchiefe as *Otters* do.

Piſc. Oh Sir if they do, it is not ſo much to me and my Fraternity as thoſe baſe Vermine the Otters do.

Auc. Why Sir, I pray, of what Fraternity are you, that you are ſo angry with the poor Otters?

Piſc. I am (Sir) a brother of the *Angle*, and therefore an Enemy to the Otter: for you are to note, that we Anglers all love one another, and therefore do I hate the Otter both for my own and for their ſakes who are of my brotherhood.

Ven. And I am a lover of Hounds, I have followed many a pack of dogs many a mile, and heard many merry men make ſport and ſcoff at Anglers.

Auc. And I profeſſe my ſelf a Falkner, and have heard many grave ſerious men pity them, 'tis ſuch a heavy, contemptible, dull recreation.

Piſc. You know Gentlemen, 'tis an eaſie thing to ſcoff at any Art or Recreation; a little *wit* mixt with ill nature, confidence and *malice* will do it; but though they often venture boldly, yet they are often caught even in their owne trap, according to that of *Lucian*, the father of the family of Scoffers.

Lucian

Lucian *well skill'd in ſcoffing, this hath writ,*
Friend, that's your folly which you think your wit:
This you vent oft, void both of wit and fear,
Meaning another, when your ſelf you jeere.

If to this you add what *Solomon* ſayes of Scoffers, That *they are an abomination to mankind.* Let him that thinks fit be a Scoffer ſtill, I account them enemies to me, and to all that love *vertue* and *Angling*.

And for you that have heard many grave ſerious men pity Anglers; let me tell you Sir, there be many men that are by others taken to be ſerious grave men, which we contemn and pity. Men that are taken to be grave, becauſe Naturehath made them of a ſowre complexion, money-getting-men, men that ſpend all their time firſt in getting, and next in anxious care to keep it; men that are condemned to be rich, and then always buſie or diſcontented: for theſe poor-rich-men, we Anglers pity them perfectly, and ſtand in no need to borrow their thoughts to think our ſelves happy. No, no, Sir, we enjoy a contentedneſſe above the reach of ſuch diſpoſitions, and as the learned and ingenuous * *Mountagne* ſayes like himſelf freely, ['When my Cat and I 'entertain each other with mutual apiſh tricks '(as playing with a garter) who knowes but

* *In Apol. for Ra. Sebond.*

'that I make my Cat more ſport then ſhe makes 'me? ſhall I conclude her to be ſimple, that 'has her time to begin or refuſe ſportiveneſſe as 'freely as I my ſelf have? Nay, who knowes 'but that it is a defect of my not underſtanding 'her language (for doubtleſſe Cats talk and rea-'ſon with one another) that we agree no better: 'and who knows but that ſhe pitties me for be-'ing no wiſer, and laughs and cenſures my fol-'lie for making ſport for her when we play to-'gether.

Thus freely ſpeaks *Mountagne* concerning Cats, and I hope I may take as great a liberty to blame any man, and laugh at him too let him be never ſo ſerious, that hath not heard what Anglers can ſay in the juſtification of their Art and Recreation, which I may again tell you is ſo full of pleaſure, that we need not borrow their thoughts to think our ſelves happy.

Ven. Sir, you have almoſt amazed me, for though I am no ſcoffer, yet I have (I pray let me ſpeak it without offence) alwayes looked upon Anglers as more patient and more ſimple men, then I fear I ſhall find you to be.

Piſc. Sir, I hope you will not judge my earneſtneſs to be impatience: and for my *ſimplicity*, if by that you mean a harmleſneſs, or that ſimplicity which was uſually found in the primitive Chriſtians, who were (as moſt Anglers are) quiet men, and followers of peace; men

that

that were so simply-wise, as not to sell their Consciences to buy riches, and with them vexation and a fear to dye. If you mean such simple men as lived in those times when there were fewer Lawyers; when men might have had a Lordship safely conveyed to them in a piece of Parchment no bigger than your hand, (though several sheets will not do it safely in this wiser age) I say, Sir, if you take us Anglers to be such simple men as I have spoke of, then my self and those of my Profession will be glad to be so understood: But if by simplicity you meant to express a general defect in those that profess and practise the excellent art of Angling, I hope in time to disabuse you, and make the contrary appear so evidently, that if you wil but have patience to hear me, I shall remove all the Anticipations that discourse, or time, or prejudice have possess'd you with against that laudable and ancient art; for I know it is worthy the *knowledge* and *practice* of a wise man.

But (Gentlemen) though I be able to do this, I am not so unmannerly as to ingross all the discourse to my self; and therefore you two having declared your selves, the one to be a lover of *Hawks*, the other of *Hounds*, I shall be most glad to hear what you can say in the commendation of that Recreation which you love and practise; and having heard what you can say, I shall be glad to exercise your attention with

what I can ſay concerning my own Recreation, and by this means we ſhall make the way to ſeem the ſhorter: and if you like my motion, I would have Mr. *Falkner* to begin.

Auc. Your motion is conſented to with all my heart, and to teſtifie it I will begin as you have deſired me.

And firſt, for the Element that I uſe to trade in, which is the *Air*, an Element of more worth than weight, an Element that doubtleſs exceeds both the *Earth* and *Water*; for though I ſometimes deal in both, yet the air is moſt properly mine, I and my Hawks uſe that moſt, and it yields us moſt recreation; it ſtops not the high ſoaring of my noble generous *Falcon*, in it ſhe aſcends to ſuch an height, as the dull eyes of beaſts and fiſh are not able to reach to; their bodies are too groſs for ſuch high elevations: in the air my troops of Hawks ſoar up on high, and when they are loſt in the ſight of men, then they attend upon and converſe with the gods, therefore I think my *Eagle* is ſo juſtly ſtyled, *Joves faithful ſervant in Ordinary*: and that very *Falcon*, that I am now going to ſee, deſerves no meaner a title, for ſhe uſually in her flight endangers her ſelf, (like the ſon of *Dedalus*) to have her wings ſcorch'd by the Suns heat, but her mettle makes her careleſs of danger, for ſhe then heeds nothing, but makes her nimble Pinions cut the fluid air, and ſo makes her high way

way over the ſteepeſt mountains and deepeſt rivers, and in her glorious carere looks with contempt upon thoſe high Steeples and magnificent Palaces which we adore and wonder at; from which height I can make her to deſcend by a word from my mouth (which ſhe both knows and obeyes) to accept of meat from my hand, to own me for her maſter, to go home with me, and be willing the next day to afford me the like recreation.

And more, this Element of air which I profeſs to trade in, the worth of it is ſuch, and it is of ſuch neceſſity, that no creature whatſoever, not onely thoſe numerous creatures that feed on the face of the earth, but thoſe various creatures that have their dwelling within the waters, every creature that hath life in its Noſtrils ſtands in need of my Element. The waters cannot preſerve the fiſh without air, witneſs the not-breaking of Ice in an extreme Froſt; the reaſon is, for that if the inſpiring and expiring Organ of any animal be ſtopt, it ſuddenly yields to Nature, and dies. Thus neceſſary is *air* to the exiſtence both of *fiſh* and *beaſts*, nay, even to man himſelf; that air or breath of life with which God at firſt inſpired Mankind, he, if he wants it, dies preſently, becomes a ſad object to all that loved and beheld him, and in an inſtant turns to putrefaction.

Nay

Nay more, the very birds of the air, (those that be not Hawks) are both so many and so useful and pleasant to mankind, that I must not let them pass without some observations: They both feed and refresh him; feed him with their choice bodies, and refresh him with their heavenly voices. I will not undertake to mention the several kinds of Fowle by which this is done; and his curious palate pleased by day, and which with their very excrements afford him a soft lodging at night. These I will pass by, but not those little nimble Musicians of the air, that warble forth their curious Ditties, with which Nature hath furnished them to the shame of Art.

As first the *Lark*, when she means to rejoyce, to cheer her self and those that hear her, she then quits the earth, and sings as she ascends higher into the air, and having ended her heavenly imploiment, grows then mute and sad to think she must descend to the dull earth, which she would not touch but for necessity.

How doth the *Black-bird* and *Thrassel* with their melodious voices bid welcome to the cheerful Spring, and in their fixed Moneths warble forth such ditties as no art or instrument can reach to?

Nay, the smaller birds also do the like in their particular seasons, as namely the *Leverock*, the *Tit-lark*, the little *Linnet*, and the honest

neſt *Robin*, that loves man-kind both alive and dead.

But the *Nightingale* (another of my Airy Creatures,) breaths ſuch ſweet lowd muſick out of her little inſtrumentall throat, that it might make mankind to think Miracles are not ceaſed. He that at midnight, (when the very laborer ſleeps ſecurely) ſhould hear (as I have very often) the clear aires, the ſweet deſcants, the naturall riſing and falling, the doubling and redoubling of her voice, might well be lifted above earth, and ſay, Lord, what Muſick haſt thou provided for the Saints in Heaven, when thou affordeſt men ſuch muſick on earth!

And this makes me the leſſe to wonder at the many *Aviaries* in *Italy*, or at the great charge of *Varro* his *Aviarie*, the ruines of which are yet to be ſeen in *Rome*, and is ſtill ſo famous there, that it is reckoned for one of thoſe Notables which men of forrain nations either record or lay up in their memories when they return from travell.

This for the birds of pleaſure, of which very much more might be ſaid. My next ſhall be of Birds of Politicall uſe; I think 'tis not to be doubted that Swallowes have been taught to carry Letters betwixt two Armies. But 'tis certain that when the Turks beſieged *Malta* or *Rodes* (I now remember not which 'twas) *Pi-*

geons

geons are then related to carry and recarry Letters. And Mr. *G. Sandis* in his Travells (*fol.* 269.) relates it to be done betwixt *Aleppo* and *Babylon*. But if that be disbelieved, 'tis not to be doubted that the *Dove* was sent by *Noah*, to give him notice of Land, when to him all appeared to be Sea, and the Dove proved a faithfull messenger. And for the Sacrifices of the Law, a pair of *Turtle Doves* or young *Pigeons* were as well accepted as costly *Bulls* and *Rams*. And when God would feed the Prophet *Elijah*, (1 *King.* 17.) after a kind of miraculous manner hee did it by *Ravens*, who brought him meat morning and evening. Lastly, the Holy Ghost when he descended visibly upon our Saviour, did it by assuming the shape of a *Dove*. And to conclude this part of my Discourse, pray remember these wonders were done by birds of the aire, the Element in which they and I take so much pleasure.

There is also a little contemptible winged Creature (an Inhabitant of my Aerial Element) namely the laborious *Bee*, of whose *Prudence*, *Policy* and regular Government of their own Commonwealth I might say much, as also of their several kinds, and how usefull their honey and wax is both for meat and Medicines to mankind; but I will leave them to their sweet labor, without the least disturbance, believing them to be all very busie amongst the herbs and flowers

flowers that we see nature puts forth this *May* morning.

And now to return to my hawks from whom I have made too long a Digression; you are to note, that they are usually distinguished into two kinds; namely the long-winged and the short-winged Hawk: of the first kind, there be chiefly in use amongst us in this Nation,

The *Gerfalcon* and *Jerkin.*
The *Falcon* and *Tassel-gentel.*
The *Laner* and *Laneret.*
The *Bockerel* and *Bockeret.*
The *Saker* and *Sacaret.*
The *Marlin* and *Jack Marlin.*
The *Hoby* and *Jack.*
There is the *Stelletto* of *Spain.*
The *Bloud* red *Rook* from *Turky.*
The *Waskite* from *Virginia.*
And there is of short win ged Hawks,
The *Eagle* and *Iron.*
The *Goshawk* and *Tarcel.*
The *Sparhawk* and *Musket.*
The French *Pye* of two sorts.

These are reckoned Hawks of note and worth, but we have also of an inferiour rank.

The *Stanyel*, the *Ringtail.*
The *Raven*, the *Buzzard.*
The forked *Kite*, the bald *Buzzard.*

The

The *Hen-driver*, and others that I forbear to name.

Gentlemen, If I should inlarge my Discourse to the observation of the *Eires*, the *Buncher*, the *Ramish-Hawk*, the *Haggard*, and the two sorts of *Lentners*, and then treat of their severall *Ayries*, their *Mewings*, rare order of casting, and the renovation of their *Feathers*, their reclaiming, dyeting, and then come to their rare stories of practice; I say, if I should enter into these, and many other observations that I could make, it would be much, very much pleasure to me: but lest I should break the rules of Civility with you, by taking up more then the proportion of time allotted to me, I will here break off, and intreat you Mr. *Venator*, to say what you are able in the commendation of Hunting, to which you are so much affected, and if time wil serve, I will beg your favor for a further enlargment of some of those several heads of which I have spoken. But no more at present.

Venat. Well Sir, and I will now take my turn, and will first begin with a commendation of the earth, as you have done most excellently of the Air, the Earth being that Element upon which I drive my pleasant wholesome hungry trade. The Earth is a solid, settled Element; an Element most universally beneficiall both to man and beast; to men who have their severall Re-

Recreations upon it, as Horſe-races, Hunting, ſweet ſmells, pleaſant walks. The earth feeds man, and all thoſe ſeveral beaſts that both feed him and afford him recreation: What pleaſure doth man take in hunting the ſtately *Stag*, the generous *Buck*, the *Wild Boar*, the cunning *Otter*, the crafty *Fox*, and the fearful *Hare*? And if I may deſcend to a lower game, what pleaſure is it ſometimes with Gins to betray the very vermine of the earth? as namely the *Fichat*, the *Fulimart*, the *Ferret*, the *Pole-cat*, the *Mould-warp*, and the like creatures that live upon the face, and within the bowels of the earth. How doth the earth bring forth *herbs*, *flowers* and *fruits*, both for *phyſick* and the *pleaſure* of mankind? and above all, to me at leaſt, the fruitful *Vine*, of which when I drink moderately, it clears my brain, chears my heart, and ſharpens my wit. How could *Cleopatra* have feaſted *Mark Antony* with eight Wild Boars roaſted whole at one Supper, and other meat ſuitable, if the earth had not been a bountiful mother? But to paſs by the mighty *Elephant*, which the earth breeds and nouriſheth, and deſcend to the leaſt of creatures, how doth the earth afford us a doctrinal example in the little *Piſmire*, who in the Summer provides and layes up her Winter-proviſion, and teaches man to do the like? the earth feeds and carries thoſe horſes that carry us. If I would be prodigal of my time and your patience,

ence, what might not I say in commendations of the earth? That puts limits to the proud and raging *Sea*, and by that means preserves both man and beast that it destroyes them not; as we see it daily doth those that venture upon the sea, and are there shipwreckt, drowned, and left to feed Haddocks; when we that are so wise as to keep our selves on *earth*, *walk*, and *talk*, and *live*, and *eat*, and *drink*, and go a *hunting*: of which recreation I will say a little, and then leave Mr. *Piscator* to the commendation of Angling.

Hunting is a game for Princes and noble persons; it hath been highly prized in all Ages; it was one of the qualifications that *Xenophon* bestowed on his *Cyrus*, that he was a Hunter of wild beasts. Hunting trains up the younger Nobility to the use of manly exercises in their riper age. What more manly exercise than *hunting the wild Bore*, the *Stag*, the *Buck*, the *Fox* or the *Hare*? How doth it preserve health, and increase strength and activity?

And for the Dogs that we use who can commend their excellency to that height which they deserve? How perfect is the Hound at *smelling*, who never leaves nor forsakes his sent, but follows it thorow so many changes and varieties of other sents, even over and in the water, and into the earth? What musique doth a pack of Dogs then make to any man, whose heart and ears are so happy as to be set to the tune

tune of such instruments? How will a right *Greyhound* fix his eye on the best *Buck* in a *herd*, single him out and follow him, and him onely through a whole herd of Rascal game, and still know and kill him? For my Hounds I know the language of them, and they know the language and meaning of one another as perfectly as we know the voices of those with whom we discourse daily.

I might enlarge my self in the commendation of *hunting*, and of the noble hound especially, as also of the docibleness of *dogs* in general; and I might make many observations of Land-creatures, that for composition, order, figure and constitution, approch neereſt to the completeness and understanding of man; especially of those creatures which *Moses* in the Law permitted to the Jews, (which have cloven Hoofs and chew the Cud) which I shall forbear to name, because I will not be so uncivil with Mr. *Piscator*, as not to allow him a time for the commendation of *Angling*, which he calls an Art, but doubtless 'tis an easie one: and Mr. *Auceps*, I doubt we shall hear a watry discourse of it, but I hope 'twill not be a long one.

Auc. And I hope so too, though I feare it will.

Pisc. Gentlemen, let not prejudice prepossesse you. I confesse my discourse is like to

prove ſuitable to my Recreation, *calm* and *quiet*; we ſeldome take the name of God into our mouths, but it is either to praiſe him or pray to him; if others uſe it vainly in the midſt of their recreations, ſo vainly as if they meant to conjure, I muſt tell you it is neither our fault nor our cuſtom; we, we proteſt againſt it. But, pray remember I accuſe nobody; for as I would not make a *watry* diſcourſe, ſo I would not put too much *vinegar* into it, nor would I raiſe the reputation of my own Art by the diminution or ruine of anothers. And ſo much for the Prologue to what I mean to ſay.

And now for the *Water*, the Element that I trade in. The *water* is the eldeſt daughter of the Creation, the Element upon which the Spirit of God did firſt move, the Element which God commanded to bring forth living creatures abundantly; and without which thoſe that inhabit the Land, even all creatures that have breath in their noſtrils muſt ſuddenly return to putrefaction. *Moſes* the great Law-giver and chief Philoſopher, skilled in all the learning of the Egyptians, who was called the friend of God, and knew the mind of the Almighty, names this element the firſt in the Creation; this is the element upon which the Spirit of God did firſt move, and is the chief Ingredient in the Creation: Many Philoſophers have made it to comprehend all the other Elements,

but

but moſt allow it the chiefeſt in the mixtion of all living creatures.

There be that profeſs to believe that all bodies are made of *water*, and may be reduced back again to water onely: they endeavour to demonſtrate it thus:

Take a *Willow*, (or any like ſpeedy growing plane) newly rooted in a box or barrel full of earth, weigh them all together exactly when the tree begins to grow, and then weigh all together after the tree is increaſed from its firſt rooting to weigh an hundred pound weight more than when it was firſt rooted and weighed; and you ſhall find this augment of the tree to be without the diminution of one dram of the earth. Hence they infer this increaſe of wood to be from water of rain, or from dew, and not to be from any other Element. And they affirm, they can reduce this wood back again to water; and they affirm alſo the ſame may be done in any *animal* or *vegetable*. And this I take to be a fair teſtimony of the excellency of my element of water.

The *Water* is more productive than the *Earth*. Nay, the earth hath no fruitfulneſs without ſhowers or dews; all the *herbs*, and *flowers*, and *fruit* are produced and thrive by the water; and the very Minerals are fed by ſtreams that run under ground, whoſe natural courſe carries them to the tops of many high mountains, as

we see by several springs breaking forth on the tops of the highest hills, and is also witnessed by the daily tryal and testimony of several Miners.

Nay, the increase of those creatures that are bred and fed in the water, are not onely more and more miraculous, but more advantagious to man, not onely for the lengthning of his life, but for the preventing of sickness; for 'tis observed by the most learned Physicians, that the casting off of Lent and other Fish-dayes, (which hath not onely given the Lie to so many learned, pious, wise Founders of Colledges, for which we should be ashamed) hath doubtless been the chief cause of those many putride, shaking, intermitting Agues, unto which this Nation of ours is now more subject than those wiser Countries that feed on Herbs, Sallets and plenty of Fish; of which it is observed in Story, that the greatest part of the world now do. And it may be fit to remember that *Moses* (*Lev.*11.9. *Deut.*14.9.) appointed fish to be the chief diet for the best Common-wealth that ever yet was.

And it is observable not onely that there are *fish*, (as namely the *Whale*) three times as big as the mighty Elephant, that is so fierce in battel; but that the mightiest Feasts have been of Fish. The *Romans* in the height of their glory have made fish the mistress of all their entertainments;

tainments; they have had Muſique to uſher in their *Sturgeon*, *Lampreyes* and *Mullet*, which they would purchaſe at rates rather to be wondred at than believed. He that ſhall view the Writings of *Macrobius* or *Varro*, may be confirmed and informed of this, and of the incredible value of their fiſh and fiſh-ponds.

But, Gentlemen, I have almoſt loſt my ſelf, which I confeſs I may eaſily do in this Philoſophical Diſcourſe; I met with moſt of it very lately (and I hope happily) in a conference with a moſt learned Phyſician, a dear friend, that loves both me and my art of Angling. But however I will wade no deeper in theſe myſterious arguments, but paſs to ſuch Obſervations as I can manage with more pleaſure, and leſſe fear of running into error. But I muſt not yet forſake the Waters, by whoſe help we have ſo many known advantages.

And firſt, (to paſſe by the miraculous cures of our known *Baths*) how advantagious is the *Sea* for our daily Traffique, without which we could not now ſubſiſt? How does it not onely furniſh us with food and phyſick for the bodies, but with ſuch obſervations for the mind as ingenuous perſons would not want?

How ignorant had we been of the beauty of *Florence*, of the *Monuments*, *Urns* and *Rarities* that yet remain in and near unto old and new *Rome*, (ſo many as it is ſaid will take up a years

time to view, and afford to each but a convenient consideration;) and therefore it is not to be wondred at, that so learned and devout a Father as St. *Jerome*, after his wish to have seen Christ in the flesh, and to have heard St. *Paul* preach, makes his third wish to have seen *Rome* in her glory; and that beauty is not yet all lost, for what pleasure is it to see the Monuments of *Livy*, the choicest of Historians; of *Tully*, the best of Orators; and to see the Bay-trees that now grow out of the very Tomb of *Virgil*? These to any that love learning. But what pleasure is it to a devout Christian to see there the humble house in which Saint *Paul* was content to dwell; and to view the many rich *Statues* that are there made in honour of his memory? nay, to see the very place in which Saint *Peter* and he lie buried together? These are in and near to *Rome*. And how much more doth it please the pious curiosity of a Christian to see that place on which the blessed Saviour of the world was pleased to humble himself, and to take our nature upon him, and to converse with men; to see Mount *Sion*, *Jerusalem*, and the very Sepulchre of our Jesus? How may it beget and heighten the zeal of a Christian to see the Devotions that are daily paid to him at that place? Gentlemen, lest I forget my self I will stop here, and remember you, that but for my Element of water the Inhabitants of this poor Island

Iſland muſt remaine ignorant that ſuch things have yet a being.

Gentlemen, I might both inlarge and loſe my ſelf in ſuch like Arguments; I might tell you that Almighty God is ſaid to have ſpoken to a *Fiſh*, but never to a *Beaſt*; that he hath made a *Whale* a Ship to carry and ſet his Prophet *Jonah* ſafe on the appointed ſhore. Of theſe I might ſpeake, but I muſt in manners break off, for I ſee *Thehalds* houſe. I cry you mercy for being ſo long, and thank you for your patience.

Anceps. Sir, My pardon is eaſily granted you: I except againſt nothing that you have ſaid, nevertheleſſe I muſt part with you at this Park-wall, for which I am very ſory; but I aſſure you Mr. *Piſcator* I now part with you full of good thoughts, not only of your ſelf, but your Recreation. And ſo gentlemen, God keep you both.

Piſc. Well, now Mr. *Venator* you ſhall neither want time nor my attention to hear you inlarge your Diſcourſe concerning Hunting.

Venat. Not I Sir, I remember you ſaid that *Angling* it ſelf was of great Antiquity, and a perfect Art, and an Art not eaſily attained to; and you have ſo won upon me in your former diſcourſe, that I am very deſirous to hear what you can ſay further concerning thoſe particulars.

Pisc. Sir, I did say so, and I doubt not but if you and I did converse together but a few houres, to leave you possest with the same high and happy thoughts that now possess me of it; not only of the Antiquity of *Angling*, but that it deserves commendations, and that it is an Art, and an Art worthy the knowledg & practise of a wise man.

Venat. Pray Sir speak of them what you think fit, for we have yet five miles to the *Thatcht House*, during which walk I dare promise you my patience and deligent attention shall not be wanting. And if you shall make that to appear which you have undertaken, first, that it is an Art, and an Art worth the learning, I shall beg that I may attend you a day or tway a fishing, and that I may become your Scholer, & be instructed in the Art it self which you so much magnifie.

Piscat. O Sir, doubt not but that *Angling* is an Art, and an Art worth your learning: the Question is rather whether you be capable of learning it? for *Angling* is somewhat like *Poetry*, men are to be born so: I mean with inclinations to it, though both may be heightned by practice and experience; but he that hopes to be a good *Angler* must not only bring an inquiring, searching, observing wit, but he must bring a large measure of hope and patience, and a love and propensity to the Art it self; but having once got and practis'd it, then doubt not but *Angling* will prove to be so pleasant,

that

that it will prove like Vertue, a reward to it self.

Venat. Sir, I am now become so full of expectation that I long much to have you proceed, and in the order that you propose.

Pisc. Then first, for the *antiquity* of *Angling*, of which I shall not say much, but only this; Some say it is as ancient as *Deucalions* Flood: others, that *Belus*, who was the first Inventer of Godly and vertuous recreations, was the first Inventer of *Angling*: & some others say (for former times have had their disquisitions about the Antiquity of it) that *Seth*, one of the sons of *Adam*, taught it to his sons, & that by them it was derived to posteritie: others say, that he left it ingraven on those pillars which he erected, and trusted to preserve the knowledg of the *Mathematicks*, *Musick*, and the rest of that precious knowledg, & those usefull Arts, which by Gods appointment or allowance and his noble industry were thereby preserved from perishing in *Noahs* flood.

These Sir, have been the opinions of severall men, that have possibly endeavoured to make *angling* more ancient then is needfull, or may well be warranted; but for my part, I shall content my self in telling you that Angling is much more ancient then the Incarnation of our Saviour; for in the Prophet *Amos* mention is made of *fish-hooks*; and in the Book of *Job* (which was long before the days of *Amos*, for that book is

is said to be writ by *Moses*) mention is made also of fish-hooks, which must imply Anglers in those times.

But my worthy friend, as I would rather prove my self a *Gentleman* by being *learned*, and *humble*, *valliant*, and *inoffensive*, *vertuous* and *communicable*, then by any fond ostentation of riches, or wanting these vertues my self, boast that these were in my Ancestors (and yet I grant that where a noble and ancient descent and such merits meet in any man, it is a double dignification of that person:) So if this Antiquity of *angling*, (which for my part I have not forced,) shall like an antiant family, be either an honour or an ornament to this vertuous Art which I profess to love and practice, I shall be the gladder that I made an accidentall mention of the antiquitie of it; of which I shall say no more but proceed to that just commendations which I think it deserves.

And for that I shall tell you, that in ancient times a debate hath risen, (and it remaines yet unresolved) Whether the happinesse of man in this world doth consist more in *Contemplation* or *action*.

Concerning which some have endeavoured to maintain their opinion of the first, by saying, *That the nearer we Mortals come to God by way of imitation, the more happy we are.* And they say, *That God enjoys himself only by a contemplation of*

of his own infiniteneſſe, Eternity, Power and Goodneſs, and the like. And upon this ground many Cloyſteral men of great learning and devotion prefer *Contemplation* before *action*. And many of the Fathers ſeem to approve this opinion, as may appear in their Commentaries upon the words of our Saviour to *Martha*, *Luke* 10. 41, 42.

And on the contrary, there want not men of equal authority and credit, that prefer *action* to be the more excellent, as namely *experiments in Phyſick, and the application of it, both for the eaſe and prolongation of mans life*; by which each man is enabled to act and do good to others, either to ſerve his Countrey, or do good to particular perſons; and they ſay alſo, *That action is Doctrinal, and teaches both art and vertue, and is a maintainer of humane ſociety*; and for theſe and other like reaſons to be preferred before *contemplation*.

Concerning which two Opinions I ſhall forbear to adde a third by declaring my own, and reſt my ſelf contented in telling you, (my very worthy friend) that both theſe meet together, and do moſt properly belong to the moſt *honeſt, ingennous, quiet*, and *harmleſſe* art of *Angling*.

And firſt, I ſhall tell you what ſome have obſerved, (and I have found to be a real truth) that the very ſitting by the Rivers ſide is not onely

onely the quieteſt and fitteſt place for *contemplation*, but will invite an Angler to it: and this ſeems to be maintained by the learned *Pet. du Moline*, who (in his Diſcourſe of the Fulfilling of Prophecies) obſerves, that when God intended to reveal any future events or high notions to his Prophets, he then carried them either to the *Deſerts* or the *Sea-ſhore*, that having ſo ſeparated them from amidſt the preſs of *people*, and *buſineſſe*, and the cares of the world, he might ſettle their minds in a quiet repoſe, and make them fit for Revelation.

And this ſeems alſo to be intimated by the Children of *Iſrael*, (*Pſal.* 137.) who having in a ſad condition baniſhed all mirth and muſique from their penſive hearts, and having hung up their then mute Harps upon the Willow trees growing by the rivers of *Babylon*, ſate downe upon thoſe Banks bemoning the ruines of *Sion*, and contemplating their omn ſad condition.

And an ingenuous *Spaniard* ſayes, *That rivers and the Inhabitants of the watry Element were made for wiſe men to contemplate, and fools to paſſe by without conſideration.* And though I will not rank my ſelf in the number of the firſt, yet give me leave to free my ſelf from the laſt, by offering to you a ſhort contemplation, firſt of *rivers* and then of *fiſh*; concerning which I doubt not but to give you many obſervations that will appear very

very considerable: I am sure they have appeared so to me, and made many an hour passe away more pleasantly, as I have sate quietly on a flowery Bank by a calm river, and contemplated what I shall now relate to you.

And first concerning Rivers, there be divers wonders reported of them by Authors of such credit, that we need not deny them an Historical faith.

As namely of a river in *Epirus*, that puts out any lighted Torch, and kindles any Torch that was not lighted. Some Waters being drunk cause madnesse, some drunkennesse, and some laughter to death. The river *Selarus* in a few hours turns a rod or wand to be stone; and our *Cambden* mentions the like in *England*, and the like in *Lochmere* in *Ireland*. There is also a river in *Arabia*, of which all the sheep that drink thereof have their wool turned into a Vermillion colour. And one of no lesse credit than *Aristotle* tells us of a merry river, (the river *Elusina*) that dances at the noise of musique, for with musique it bubbles, dances and grows sandy, and so continues till the musique ceases, but then it presently returns to its wonted calmness and clearness. And *Cambden* tells us of a Well near to *Kerby* in *Westmoreland*, that ebbs and flows several times every day: and he tells us of a river in *Surrey*, (it is called *Mole*) that after it has run several miles, being opposed by hills, finds

finds or makes it self a way under ground, and breaks out again so far off, that the Inhabitants thereabout boast, (as the *Spaniards* do of their river *Anus*) that they feed divers flocks of sheep upon a Bridge. And, lastly, for I would not tire your patience, one of no lesse authority than *Josephus* that learned Jew, tells us of a river in *Judea*, that runs swiftly all the six dayes of the week, and stands still and rests all their *Sabbath*.

But, Sir, lest this Discourse may seem tedious, I shall give it a sweet conclusion out of that holy Poet Mr. *George Herbert* his Divine Contemplation on Gods Providence:

Lord, who hath praise enough, nay, who hath any?
None can expres thy works, but he that knows them;
And none can know thy works, they are so many,
And so complete, but onely he that owes them.

We all acknowledge both thy power and love
To be exact, transcendent and divine;
Who dost so strangely and so sweetly move,
Whilst all things have their end, yet none but thine.

Wherefore, most sacred Spirit, I here present
For me, and all my fellows, praise to thee;
And just it is that I should pay the rent,
Because the benefit accrues to me.

And

And as concerning Fish, in that Psalm, (*Psal.* 104.) wherein for height of Poetry and Wonders the Prophet *David* seems even to exceed himself, how doth he there express himself in choice Metaphors, even to the amazement of a contemplative Reader, concerning the *Sea*, the *Rivers*, and the *Fish* therein contained? And the great Naturalist *Pliny* says, *That Natures great and wonderful power is more demonstrated in the Sea than on the Land.* And this may appear by the numerous and various creatures, inhabiting both in and about that Element; as to the Readers of *Gesner*, *Randelitius*, *Pliny*, *Ausonius*, *Aristotle*, and others, may be demonstrated. But I will sweeten this discourse also out of a Contemplation in Divine *Dubartas*, who says,

Dubartas in the fifth day.

God quickned in the sea and in the rivers,
So many fishes of so many features,
That in the waters we may see all creatures,
Even all that on the earth is to be found,
As if the world were in deep waters drown'd.
For seas (as well as skies) have Sun, Moon, Stars;
(As well as air) Swallows, Rooks and Stares;
(As well as earth) Vines, Roses, Nettles, Melons,
Mushroms, Pinks, Gilliflowers, and many millions
Of other plants, more rare, more strange than these,
As very fishes living in the seas:

As

As also Rams, Calves, Horses, Hares and Hogs,
Wolves, Urchins, Lions, Elephants and Dogs;
Yea, Men and Maids, and which I most admire,
The mitred Bishop, and the cowled Fryer.
Of which, examples but a few years since,
Were shewn the Norway *and* Polonian *Prince.*

These seem to be wonders, but have had so many confirmations from men of learning and credit, that you need not doubt them; nor are the number; nor the various shapes of fishes, more strange or more fit for *contemplation*, than their different natures, inclinations and actions; concerning which I shall beg your patient ear a little longer.

The *Cuttle-fish* will cast a long gut out of her throat, which (like as an Angler doth his line) she sendeth forth and pulleth in again at her pleasure, according as she sees some little fish come near to her; and the *Cuttle-fish* (being then hid in the gravel) lets the smaller fish nibble and bite the end of it, at which time she by little and little draws the smaller fish so near to her, that she may leap upon her, and then catches and devours her: and for this reason some have called this fish the *Sea-angler*.

Mount. Esfayes: and others affirm this.

And there is a fish called a *Hermit*, that at a certain age gets into a dead fishes shell, and like a Hermite dwells there alone, shifting the wind

wind and weather, and so turns her shell that she makes it defend her from the injuries that they would bring upon her.

There is also a fish called by *Elian* (in his 9. book of Living Creatures, Chap. 16.) the *Adonis*, or Darling of the Sea: so called, because it is a loving and innocent fish, a fish that hurts nothing that hath life, and is at peace with all the numerous Inhabitants of that vast watery Element: and truly I think most Anglers are so disposed to most of mankind.

And there are also lustful and chast Fishes, of which I shall give you examples.

And first, what *Dubartas* sayes of a fish called the *Sargus*; which (because none can expresse it better then he does) I shall give you in his owne words, supposing it shall not have the lesse credit for being Verse, for he hath gathered this, and other observations out of Authors that have been great and industrious searchers into the secrets of Nature.

The Adulterous Sargus *doth not only change*
Wifes every day in the deep streams, but (strange)
As if the honey of Sea-love delight
Could not suffice his rangeing appetite,
Goes courting She-Goats on the grassie shore,
Horning their husbands that had horns before.

And the same Author writes concerning the

Cantharus, that which you shall also heare in his own words.

But contrary, the constant Cantharus,
Is ever constant to his faithful Spouse,
In nuptial duties spending his chaste life,
Never loves any but his own dear wife.

Sir, but a little longer, and I have done.

Venat. Sir, take what libertie you think fit, for your discourse seems to be Musique, and charms me into an attention.

Pisc. Why then Sir, I will take a little liberty to tell, or rather to remember you what is said of *Turtle-Doves*: First, That they silently plight their troth and marry; and that then, the Survivor scornes (as the *Thracian women* are said to do) to out-live his or her mate; and this is taken for such a truth, and if the Survivor shall ever couple with another, then not only the living, but the dead, (be it either the He or the She) is denyed the *name* and *honour* of a true *Turtle-Dove*.

And to parallel this Land Rarity, and teach mankind morall faithfulnesse, and to condemne those that talk of Religion, and yet come short of the morall faith of fish and fowle; Men that violate the Law affirmed by Saint *Paul* (*Rom.* 2. 14, 15.) to be writ in their hearts, (and which he sayes, shall at the last day condemne and leave

leave them without excuſe.) I pray hearken to what *Dubartas* ſings, (for the hearing of ſuch conjugal faithfulneſs, will be Muſick to all chaſte ears) and therefore I pray hearken to what *Dubartas* ſings of the *Mullet*. *Dubartas fifth day.*

But for chaſte love the Mullet *hath no peer;*
For, if the Fiſher hath ſurpriz'd her pheer,
As mad with wo, to ſhare ſhe followeth,
Preſt to conſort him both in life and death.

On the contrary, what ſhall I ſay of the *Houſe-Cock*, which treads any Hen, and then (contrary to the *Swan*, the *Partridge* and *Pigeon*) takes no care to hatch, to feed or to cheriſh his own brood, but is ſenſeleſſe though they periſh.

And 'tis conſiderable, that the *Hen* (which becauſe ſhe alſo takes any *Cock*, expects it not) who is ſure the Chickens be her own, hath by a morall impreſſion her care and affection to her own Brood more then doubled, even to ſuch a height, that our Saviour in expreſſing his love to *Jeruſalem* (*Mat.* 23. 37.) quotes her for an example of tender affection, as his Father had done *Job* for a pattern of patience.

And to parallel this *Cock*, there be divers fiſhes that caſt their ſpawne on flags or ſtones, and then leave it uncovered, and expoſed to become a prey, and be devoured by Vermine

or other fishes: but other fishes (as namely the *Barbel*) take such care for the preservation of their seed, that (unlike to the *Cock* or the *Cuckoe*) they mutually labour (both the Spawner and the Melter) to cover their Spawn with sand, or watch it, or hide it in some secret place unfrequented by Vermine, or by any Fish but themselves.

Sir, these Examples may, to you and others, seem strange; but they are testifyed some by *Aristotle*, some by *Pliny*, some by *Gesner*, and by many others of credit, and are believed and known by divers, both of wisdom and experience, to be a Truth; and indeed are (as I said at the beginning) fit for the contemplation of a most serious and a most pious man. And doubtless this made the Prophet *David* say, *They that occupy themselves in deep waters see the wonderful works of God:* indeed such wonders and pleasures too as the land affords not.

And that they be fit for the contemplation of the most prudent, and pious, and peaceable men, seems to be testifyed by the practice of so many devout and contemplative men, as the *Patriarchs* and *Prophets* of old, and of the *Apostles* of our Saviour in these later times; of which twelve he chose four that were Fishermen, whom he inspired and sent to publish his blessed Will to the *Gentiles*, *freedom from the incombrances of the Law, and a new way to everlasting*

ing life: this was the imployment of these Fishermen. Concerning which choice some have made these Observations.

First, that he never reproved these for their Imployment or Calling, as he did the *Scribes* and the *Money-changers.* And secondly, he found that the hearts of such men by nature were fitted for contemplation and quietnesse; men of mild, and sweet, and peaceable spirits, as indeed most Anglers are: these men our blessed Saviour, (who is observed to love to plant grace in good natures) though nothing be too hard for him, yet these men he chose to call from their irreprovable imployment of Fishing, and gave them grace to be his Disciples, and to follow him. I say foure of twelve.

And it is observable, that it was our Saviours will that these our four Fishermen should have a priority of nomination in the catalogue of his twelve Apostles, (*Mat.*10.) as namely first St. *Peter*, St. *Andrew*, St. *James* and St. *John*, and then the rest in their order.

And it is yet more observable, that when our blessed Saviour went up into the Mount, when he left the rest of his Disciples, and chose onely three to bear him company at his *Transfiguration*, that those three were all Fishermen. And it is to be believed, that all the other Apostles, after they betook themselves to follow Christ, betook themselves to be Fishermen

too; for it is certain that the greater number of them were found together a Fishing by Jesus after his Resurrection, as is recorded in the 21. Chapter of St. *Johns* Gospel.

And since I have your promise to hear me with patience, I will take a liberty to look back upon an observation that hath been made by an ingenuous and learned man, who observes that God hath been pleased to allow those, whom he himself hath appointed to write his holy Will in holy Writ, yet to express his Will in such Metaphors as their former affections or practice had inclined them to; & he brings *Solomon* for an example, who before his conversion was remarkably carnally-amorous; and after by Gods appointment writ that spiritual, holy, amorous Love-song (the *Canticles*) betwixt God and his Church, (in which he sayes she had *Eyes like the fish-pools of Heshbon.*)

And if this hold in reason as I see none to the contrary, then it may be probably concluded, that *Moses* (whom, I told you before, writ the Book of *Job*) and the Prophet *Amos*, who was a Shepherd, were both Anglers, for you shall in all the Old Testament find Fish-hooks, I think but twice mentioned, namely, by meek *Moses* the friend of God, and by the humble Prophet *Amos*.

Concerning which last, namely the Prophet *Amos*, I shall make but this Observation, That he

he that ſhall read the *humble, lowly, plain ſtyle* of that *Prophet*, and compare it with the *high, glorious, eloquent ſtyle* of the Prophet *Iſaiah* (though they be both equally true) may eaſily believe him to be, not onely a Shepherd, but a good-natur'd, plain *Fiſher-man*.

Which I do the rather believe by comparing the affectionate, loving, lowly, humble Epiſtles of S. *Peter*, S. *James* and S. *John*, whom we know were all Fiſhers, with the glorious language and high Metaphors of St. *Paul*, whom we may believe was not.

And for the lawfulneſs of Fiſhing, it may very well be maintained by our Saviours bidding St. *Peter* caſt his hook into the water and catch a Fiſh, for money to pay Tribute to *Cæſar*. And let me tell you, that *angling* is of high eſteem, and of much uſe in other Nations. He that reads the Voyages of *Ferdinand Mendez Pinto*, ſhall find that there he declares to have found a King and ſeveral Prieſts a Fiſhing.

And he that reads *Plutarch*, ſhall find that Angling was not contemptible in the dayes of *Mark Antony* and *Cleopatra*, and that they in the midſt of their wonderful glory uſed Angling as a principal recreation. And let me tell you, that in the Scripture angling is alwayes taken in the beſt ſenſe, and that though hunting may be ſometimes ſo taken, yet it is but ſeldom to be ſo underſtood. And let me adde

this more, he that views the ancient Eccleſiaſtical Canons, ſhall find *Hunting* to be forbidden to Church-men, as being a toilſom, perplexing Recreation; and ſhall find *angling* allowed to *Clergy-men*, as being a harmleſſe Recreation, a recreation that invites them to *contemplation* and *quietneſſe*.

I might here enlarge my ſelf by telling you what commendations our learned *Perkins* beſtowes on angling: and how dear a lover, and great a practiſer of it our learned Doctor *Whitaker* was, as indeed many others of great note have been. But I will content my ſelf with two memorable men, that lived neer to our own time, whom I alſo take to have been ornaments to the Art of Angling.

The firſt is Doctor *Nowel* ſometimes Dean of the Cathedral Church of Saint *Paul* in *London*, where his Monument ſtands yet undefaced; a man that in the Reformation of Queen *Elizabeth* (not that of *Henry the VIII.*) was ſo noted for his meek ſpirit, deep learning, prudence and piety, that the then Parliament and Convocation both, choſe, injoyned and truſted him to be the man to make a Catechiſm for publick uſe, ſuch a one as ſhould ſtand as a rule for faith and manners to their poſterity. And the good old man (though he was very learned, yet knowing that God leads us not to heaven by many nor by hard queſtions) like an honeſt Angler, made

made that *good, plain, unperplext* Catechiſm which is printed with our good old Service Book. I ſay, this good man was as a ſdear lover, and conſtant practicer of Angling, as any Age can produce; and his cuſtome was to ſpend beſides his fixt hours of prayer, (thoſe houres which by command of the Church were enjoyned the Clergy, and voluntarily dedicated to devotion by many Primitive Chriſtians:) beſides thoſe hours, this good man was obſerved to ſpend a tenth part of his time in Angling; and alſo (for I have converſed with thoſe which have converſed with him) to beſtow a tenth part of his Revenue, and uſually all his fiſh, amongſt the poor that inhabited near to thoſe Rivers in which it was caught; ſaying often, *That charity gave life to Religion*: and at his return to his houſe would praiſe God he had ſpent that day free from worldly trouble; both harmleſly, and in a Recreation that became a Church-man. And this good man was well content, if not deſirous, that poſterity ſhould know he was an *angler*, as may appear by his Picture, now to be ſeen and carefully kept in *Braſenoſe Colledge*, (to which he was a liberall Benefactor) in which Picture he is drawn leaning on a Desk with his Bible before him, and on one hand of him his *lines, hooks*, and other *tackling* lying in a round; and on his other hand is his *Angle-rods* of ſeverall ſorts: and by them this is written, *That he*

died

died 13 *Feb.* 1601. *being aged* 95. *years,* 44. *of which he had been Dean of St.* Pauls *Church; and that his age had neither impair'd his hearing, nor dimm'd his eyes, nor weaken'd his memory, nor made any of the faculties of his mind weak or useleſſe.* 'Tis ſaid that *angling* and *temperance* were great cauſes of theſe bleſſings, and I wiſh the like to all that imitate him, and love the memory of ſo good a man.

My next and laſt example ſhall be that undervaluer of money, the late Provoſt of *Eton* Colledge, Sir *Henry Wotton,* (a man with whom I have often fiſh'd and convers'd) a man whoſe forreign Imployments in the ſervice of this *Nation,* and whoſe *experience, learning, wit* and *cheerfulneſſe* made his company to be eſteemed one of the delights of mankind; this man, whoſe very approbation of angling were ſufficient to convince any modeſt cenſurer of it, this man was alſo a moſt dear lover, and a frequent practiſer of the art of angling; of which he would ſay, *'Twas an imployment for his idle time, which was then not idlely ſpent:* for angling was after tedious Study, *a reſt to his mind, a cheerer of his ſpirits, a diverter of ſadneſſe, a calmer of unquiet thoughts, a moderator of paſſions, a procurer of contentednеſſe:* and *that it begot habits of* peace *and* patience *in thoſe that profeſs'd and practis'd it.* Indeed, my friend, you will find angling to be like the vertue of Humility, which has a calmneſs

ness of spirit, and a world of other blessings attending upon it.

Sir, this was the saying of that learned man, and I do easily believe that *peace*, and *patience*, and a calme *content* did cohabit in the cheerful heart of Sir *Henry Wotton*, because I know that when he was beyond seventy years of age, he made this description of a part of the present pleasure that possess'd him, as he sate quietly in a Summers evening on a bank a Fishing; it is a description of the Spring, which, because it glides as soft and sweetly from his pen, as that river does at this time by which it was then made, I shall repeat it unto you.

This day dame Nature seem'd in love:
The lusty sap began to move;
Fresh juice did stir th' imbracing Vines,
And birds had drawn their valentines,
The jealous Trout, *that low did lye,*
Rose at a well-dissembled flie;
There stood my friend with patient skil,
Attending of his trembling quill.
Already were the eaves possest
With the swift Pilgrims dawbed nest:
The Groves already did rejoyce,
In Philomels *triumphing voice:*
The showres were short, the weather mild,
The morning fresh, the evening smil'd.
Jone *takes her neat rub'd pail, and now*

She

She trips to milk the ſand-red Cow;
Where, for ſome ſturdy foot-ball Swain,
Jone *ſtrokes a* ſillibub *or twain.*
The fields and gardens were beſet
With Tulips, Crocus, Violet,
And now, though late, the modeſt Roſe
Did more then half a bluſh diſcloſe.
Thus all looks gay, and full of cheer
To welcome the new livery'd year.

Theſe were the thoughts that then poſſeſt the undiſturbed mind of Sir *Henry Wotton.* Will you hear the wiſh of another Angler, and the commendation of his happy life which he alſo ſings in Verſe? *viz. Jo. Davors* Eſq.

Let me live harmleſly, and near the brink
Of Trent *or* Avon *have a dwelling place;*
Where I may ſee my quill *or* cork *down ſink*
With eager bit of Pearch, *or* Bleak, *or* Dace;
And on the world and my Creator think,
Whilſt ſome men ſtrive, ill gotten goods t'imbrace;
And others ſpend their time in baſe exceſſe
Of wine or worſe, in war and wantonneſs.

Let them that liſt, theſe paſtimes ſtill purſue,
And on ſuch pleaſing fancies feed their fill,
So I the fields *and* meadowes *green may view,*
And daily by freſh Rivers *walk at wi'l,*
Among the Daiſies *and the* Violets *blue.*

Red

Red Hiacynth, *and yellow* Daffadil,
Purple Narciſſus *like the morning rayes,*
Pale Ganderglaſſe, *and azure* Culverkayes.

I count it higher pleaſure to behold
The ſtately compaſſe of the loftie skie,
And in the midſt thereof (like burning gold)
The flaming Chariot of the worlds great eye,
The watry clouds, that in the air up rold,
With ſundry kinds of painted colours flye;
And fair Aurora *lifting up her head,*
Still bluſhing, riſe from old Tithonius *bed.*

The hills *and* mountaines *raiſed from the* plains,
The plains *extended level with the* ground,
The grounds divided into ſundry vains,
The veins inclos'd with rivers *running round;*
Theſe rivers making way through natures chains
With headlong courſe into the ſea profound;
The raging ſea, beneath the vallies low,
Where lakes *and* rils *and* rivulets *do flow.*

The lofty woods the forreſts wide and long
Adorn'd with leaves and branches freſh and green,
In whoſe cool bowres the birds with many a ſong
Do welcome with their Quire the Summers Queen:
The Meadowes fair where Flora's *gifts among*
Are intermixt, with verdant graſſe between.
The ſilver-ſcaled fiſh that ſoftly ſwim
Within the ſweet brooks chryſtal watry ſtream.

All

All these, and many more of his Creation,
That made the Heavens, the Angler *oft doth see,*
Taking therein no little delectation,
To think how strange, how wonderfull they be;
Framing thereof an inward contemplation,
To set his heart from other fancies free:
And whilst he looks on these with joyfull eye,
His mind is wrapt above the starry Skie.

Sir I am glad my memory has not lost these last Verses, because they are somewhat more pleasant and more suitable to *May-Day*, then my harsh Discourse: and I am glad your patience hath held out so long, as to hear them and me: for both together have brought us within the sight of the *Thatcht house*: and I must be your Debtor (if you think it worth your attention) for the rest of my promised discourse, till some other opportunity, and a like time of leisure.

Venat. Sir, you have Angled me on with much pleasure to the *thatcht house*: and I now find your words true *That good company makes the way seem short*, for trust me, Sir, I thought we had wanted three miles of this *House* till you shewed it to me: but now we are at it, we'l turn into it, and refresh our selves with a cup of drink and a little rest.

Pisc. Most gladly (Sir) and we'l drink a civil cup to all the *Otter Hunters* that are to meet you to morrow.

Ven.

Ven. That we will Sir, and to all the lovers of Angling too, of which number, I am now willing to be one my self, for by the help of your good discourse and company, I have put on new thoughts both of the Art of Angling, and of all that profesſe it: and if you will but meet me to morrow at the time and place appointed, and bestow one day with me and my friends in hunting the *Otter*, I will dedicate the next two dayes to wait upon you, and we two will for that time do nothing but angle, and talk of fish and fishing.

Pisc. 'Tis a match, Sir, I'l not fail you, God willing, to be at *Amwel-hill* to morrow morning before Sunrising.

CHAP. II.

Observations of the Otter and Chub.

Venat. MY friend *Piscator*, you have kept time with my thoughts, for the Sun is just rising, and I my self just now come to this place, and the dogs have just now put down an *Otter*, look down at the bottome of the hill there in that Meadow, chequered with *water-Lillies*, and *Lady-smocks*, there you may see what work they make; look looke, you may see

ſee all buſie, men and dogs, dogs and men, all buſie.

Piſc. Sir, I am right glad to meet you, and glad to have ſo fair an entrance into this dayes ſport, and glad to ſee ſo many dogs, and more men all in purſuit of the *Otter*; lets complement no longer, but joine unto them; come honeſt *Venator*, lets be gone, lets make haſt, I long to be doing: no reaſonable hedge or ditch ſhall hold me.

Ven. Gentleman Huntſman, where found you this *Otter*?

Hunt. Marry (Sir) we found her a mile from this place a fiſhing; ſhe has this morning eaten the greateſt part of this *Trout*; ſhe has only left thus much of it as you ſee, and was fiſhing for more: when we came we found him juſt at it: but we were here very early, we were here an hour before Sun-riſe, and have given her no reſt ſince we came: ſure ſhe'l hardly eſcape all theſe dogs and men. I am to have the skin if we kill him.

Ven. Why, Sir, whats the skin worth?

Hunt. 'Tis worth ten ſhillings to make gloves; the gloves of an *Otter* are the beſt fortification for your hands that can be thought on againſt wet weather.

Piſc. I pray, honeſt Huntſman, let me ask you a pleaſant queſtion, do you hunt a beaſt or a fiſh?

Hun. Sir, It is not in my power to reſolve you

you, I leave it to be resolved by the Colledg of *Carthusians*, who have made vowes never to eat flesh. But I have heard, the question hath been debated among many great Clerks, and they seem to differ about it; yet most agree that his tail is Fish: and if his body be Fish too, then I may say, that a Fish will walk upon land, (for an *Otter* does so) somtimes five or six, or ten miles in a night. But (Sir) I can tell you certainly, that he devours much Fish, and kils and spoils much more then he eats: And I can tell you, that this Dog-fisher (for so the Latins call him) can smell a Fish in the water an hundred yards from him (*Gesner* says, much farther) and that his stones are good against the Falling-sickness: and that there is an herb *Benione*, which being hung in a linnen cloth near a Fish-pond, or any haunt that he uses, makes him to avoid the place; which proves he smell both by water and land: and I can tell you there is brave hunting this Water-dog in *Cornwall*, where there have been so many, that our *Camden* sayes, there is a river called *Otterſey*, which was so named, by reason of the abundance of *Otters* that bred and fed in it.

And thus much for my knowledge of the *Otter*, which you may now see above water at vent, and the dogs close with him; I now see he will not last long, follow therefore my Masters, follow, for *Sweetlips* was like to have him at this vent.

Ven. Oh me, all the Horſe are got over the River, what ſhall we do now? ſhall we follow them over the water?

Hunt. No, Sir, no, be not ſo eager, ſtay a little and follow me, for both they and the dogs will be ſuddenly on this ſide again, I warrant you: and the *Otter* too, it may bee: now have at him with *Kilbuck*, for hee vents again.

Ven. Marry ſo he is, for look he vents in that corner. Now, now *Ringwood* has him: now he's gone again, and has bit the poor dog. Now *Sweetlips* has her: hold her *Sweetlips!* now all the dogs have her, ſome above and ſome under water; but now, now ſhe's tyr'd, and paſt loſing: come bring him to me, *Sweetlips*. Look, 'tis a Bitch-*Otter*, and ſhe has lately whelp'd, let's go to the place where ſhe was *put down*, and not far from it you will find all her young ones, I dare warrant you, and kill them all too.

Hunt. Come, Gentlemen, come all, let's go to the place where we *put down* the *Otter*. Look you, hereabout it was that ſhe kenell'd; look you, here it was indeed, for here's her young ones, no leſs than five; come let's kill them all.

Piſc. No, I pray Sir, ſave me one, and I'l try if I can make her tame, as I know an ingenuous Gentleman in *Leiceſter-ſhire* (Mr. *Nich. Seagreave*) has done; who hath not onely made her tame, but to catch Fiſh, and do many other things of much pleaſure. *Hunt.*

Hunt. Take one with all my heart, but let us kill the reſt. And now let's go to an honeſt Ale-houſe, where we may have a cup of good *Barley-wine*, and ſing *Old Roſe*, and all of us rejoyce together.

Venat. Come my friend, *Piſcator*, let me invite you along with us; I'll bear your charges this night, and you ſhall bear mine to morrow; for my intention is to accompany you a day or two in Fiſhing.

Piſc. Sir, your requeſt is granted, and I ſhall be right glad, both to exchange ſuch a courteſie, and alſo to enjoy your company.

Venat. Well, now let's go to your ſport of Angling.

Piſc. Let's be going with all my heart. God keep you all, Gentlemen, and ſend you meet this day with another Bitch-Otter, and kill her merrily, and all her young ones too.

Ven. Now, *Piſcator*, where will you begin to fiſh?

Piſc. We are not yet come to a likely place, I muſt walk a mile further yet before I begin.

Venat. Well then, I pray as we walk tell me freely, how do you like mine Hoſte and the company? is not mine Hoſte a witty man?

Piſc. Sir, I will tell you preſently what I think of your Hoſte; but firſt I will tell you, I am glad theſe *Otters* were killed, and I am ſorry there are no more *Otter-killers*: for I know

that the want of *Otter-killers*, the not keeping the *Fence moneths* for the preſervation of *fiſh*, will in time prove the deſtruction of all *rivers*; and thoſe very few that are left that make conſcience of the Laws of the Nation, and of keeping dayes of abſtinence, will be forced to eat fleſh, or ſuffer more inconveniences than is yet foreſeen.

Venat. Why, Sir, what be thoſe that you call the Fence moneths?

Piſc. Sir, they be principally three, namely, *March*, *April* and *May*, theſe being the uſual moneths that *Salmon* come out of the ſea to ſpawn in moſt freſh rivers, and their Fry would about a certain time return back to the ſalt water, if they were not hindred by *weres* and *unlawful gins*, which the greedy Fiſher-men ſet, and ſo deſtroy them by thouſands, as they would (being ſo taught by nature) change the *freſh* for *ſalt water*. He that ſhall view the wiſe Statutes made in the 13. of *Edw. the 1.* and the like in *Rich. the III.* may ſee ſeveral proviſions made againſt the deſtruction of Fiſh: and though I profeſs no Knowledge of the Law, yet I am ſure the regulation of theſe defects might be eaſily mended. But I remember that a wiſe friend of mine did uſually ſay, *That which is every bodies buſineſſe is no bodies buſineſſe.* If it were otherwiſe, there could not be ſo many Nets and Fiſh that are under the Statute ſize ſold daily

dairy amongſt us, and of which the *conſervators* of the waters ſhould be aſhamed.

But above all, the taking Fiſh in Spawning-time, may be ſaid to be againſt nature; it is like the taking the dam on the neſt when ſhe hatches her young: a ſin ſo againſt nature, that Almighty God hath in holy Writ made a Law againſt it.

But the poor Fiſh have enemies enough beſide ſuch unnatural *Fiſher-men*, as namely the *Otters* that I ſpake of, the *Cormorant*, the *Bitterne*, the *Oſprey*, the *Seagull*, the *Herne*, the *King-fiſher*, the *Gorrara*, the *Puet*, the *Swan*, *Gooſe*, *Ducks*, and the *Craber*, which ſome call the Water-rat: againſt all which any honeſt man may make a juſt quarrel, but I will not, I will leave them to be quarrelled with, and kild by others; for I am not of a cruel nature, I love to kill nothing but Fiſh.

And now to your queſtion concerning your Hoſte, to ſpeak truly, he is not to me a good companion: for moſt of his conceits were either Scripture jeſts, or laſcivious jeſts; for which I count no man witty, for the Devil will help a man that way inclined to the firſt, and his own corrupt nature (which he alwayes carries with him) to the later. But a companion that feaſts the company with *wit* and *mirth*, and leaves out the ſin (which is uſually mixt with them) he is the man; and indeed ſuch a com-

panion ſhould have his charges born: and to ſuch company I hope to bring you this night; for at *Trout-Hall*, not far from this place, where I purpoſe to lodge to night, there is uſually an angler that proves good company: and let me tell you, good company and good diſcourſe are the very ſinews of vertue: but for ſuch diſcourſe as we heard laſt night, it infects others, the very boyes will learn to talk and ſwear as they heard mine Hoſt, and another of the company that ſhall be nameleſs; I am ſorry he is a Gentleman, for leſs Religion will not ſave their ſouls than a beggars; I think more will be required at the laſt great day. Well, you know what Example is able to do, and I know what the Poet ſayes in the like caſe, which is worthy to be noted by all parents and people of civility:

—— —— *Many a one*
Owes to his Countrey his Religion:
And in another would as ſtrongly grow,
Had but his nurſe or mother taught him ſo.

This is reaſon put into Verſe, and worthy the conſideration of a wiſe man. But of this no more, for though I love civility, yet I hate ſevere cenſures: I'll to my own art, and I doubt not but at yonder tree I ſhall catch a *Chub*, and then we'l turn to an honeſt cleanly Hoſteſs, that I know right well, reſt our ſelves there, and dreſs it for our dinner. *Venat.*

Venat. Oh Sir, a *Chub* is the worſt Fiſh that ſwimmes, I hoped for a *Trout* to my dinner.

Piſc. Truſt me, Sir, there is not a likely place for a *Trout* hereabout, and we ſtaid ſo long to take our leave of your Huntſmen this morning, that the Sun is got ſo high, and ſhines ſo clear, that I will not undertake the catching of a *Trout* till evening; and though a *Chub* be by you and many others reckoned the worſt of *fiſh*, yet you ſhall ſee I'le make it a good Fiſh, by dreſſing it.

Ven. Why, how will you dreſs him?

Piſc. Ile tell you when I have caught him. Look you here Sir, do you ſee? (but you muſt ſtand very cloſe) there lye upon the top of the water in this very hole twenty *Chubs*, Ile catch only one, and that ſhall be the biggeſt of them all: and that I will do ſo, Ile hold you twenty to one and you ſhall ſee it done.

Venat. I marry Sir, now you talk like an Artiſt, and Ile ſay you are one, when I ſhall ſee you perform what you ſay you can do; but I yet doubt it.

Piſc. You ſhall not doubt me long, for you ſhall ſee me do it preſently: look, the biggeſt of theſe *Chubs* has had ſome bruiſe upon his tail, by a Pike or ſome other accident, and that looks like a white ſpot; that very *Chub* I mean to put into your hands preſently; ſit you but down in

the ſhade, and ſtay but a little while, and Ile warrant you I'le bring him to you.

Venat. Ile ſit down and hope well, becauſe you ſeem to be ſo confident.

Piſc. Look you Sir, there is a tryal of my skill, there he is, that very *Chub* that I ſhewed you with the white ſpot on his tail; and Ile be as certain to make him a good diſh of meat, as I was to catch him. Ile now lead you to an honeſt Alehouſe where we ſhall find a cleanly room, *Lavender* in the windows, and twenty *Ballads* ſtuck about the wall; there my Hoſtis (which I may tell you, is both cleanly, and handſome, and civil) hath dreſt many a one for me, and ſhall now dreſſe it after my faſhion, and I warrant it good meat.

Ven. Come Sir, with all my heart, for I begin to be hungry, and long to be at it, and indeed to reſt my ſelf too; for though I have walk'd but four miles this morning, yet I begin to be weary; yeſterdayes hunting hangs ſtil upon me.

Piſc. Well Sir, and you ſhall quickly be at reſt, for yonder is the houſe I mean to bring you to.

Come Hoſtis, how do you? Will you firſt give us a cup of your beſt drink, and then dreſs this *Chub*, as you dreſt my laſt, when I and my friend were here about eight or ten dayes ago? but you muſt do me one courteſie, it muſt be done inſtantly. *Hoſt.*

Hoſt. I will do it, Mr. *Piſcator*, and with all the ſpeed I can.

Piſc. Now Sir, has not my Hoſtis made haſt? and does not the fiſh look lovely?

Ven. Both, upon my word, Sir, and therefore lets ſay grace and fall to eating of it.

Piſc. Wel Sir, how do you like it?

Ven. Truſt me, 'tis as good meat as I ever taſted: now let me thank you for it, drink to you, and beg a courteſie of you; but it muſt not be deny'd me.

Piſc. What is it I pray Sir? you are ſo modeſt, that me thinks I may promiſe to grant it before it is ask'd.

Ven. Why Sir, it is that from henceforth you will allow me to call you *Maſter*, and that really I may be your Scholer, for you are ſuch a companion, and have ſo quickly caught, and ſo excellently cook'd this fiſh, as makes me ambitious to be your ſcholer.

Piſc. Give me your hand; from this time forward I will be your Maſter, and teach you as much of this Art as I am able; and will, as you deſire me, tell you ſomewhat of the nature of moſt of the Fiſh that we are to Angle for, and I am ſure I both can and will tell you more then any common *Angler* yet knowes.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

How to fish for, and to dresse the Chavender *or* Chub.

Pisc. THe *Chub*, though he eat well thus dreſt, yet as he is uſually dreſt, he does not: he is objected againſt, not only for being full of ſmall forked bones, diſperſt through all his body, but that he eats watriſh, and that the fleſh of him is not firm but ſhort and taſteleſſe. The French eſteem him ſo mean, as to call him *Unvillan*; nevertheleſs he may be ſo dreſt as to make him very good meat; as namely, if he be a large Chub, then dreſs him thus:

Firſt ſcale him, and then waſh him clean, and then take out his guts; and to that end, make the hole as little and near to his gils as you may conveniently, and eſpecially make clean his throat from the graſs and weeds that are uſually in it (for if that be not very clean, it will make him to taſte very ſour) having ſo done, put ſome ſweet herbs into his belly, and then tye him with two or three ſplinters to a ſpit, and roſt him, baſted often with vinegar, or rather verjuice and butter, with good ſtore of ſalt mixt with it.

Being thus dreſt, you will find him a much better

better dish of meat than you, or most folk, even then Anglers themselves do imagine; for this dries up the fluid watry humor with which all *Chubs* do abound.

But take this rule with you, That a *Chub* newly taken and newly dreſt, is ſo much better than a *Chub* of a dayes keeping after he is dead, that I can compare him to nothing ſo fitly as to Cherries newly gathered from a tree, and others that have been bruiſed and layen a day or two in water. Being thus uſed and dreſt preſently, and not waſht after he is gutted, (for note that lying long in water, and waſhing the bloud out of the Fiſh after they be gutted, abates much of their ſweetneſſe) you will find the Chub to be ſuch meat as will recompence your labour.

Or you may dreſſe the *Chavender* or *Chub* thus:

When you have ſcaled him, and cut off his tail and fins, and waſhed him very clean, then chine or ſlit him through the middle, as a ſalt fiſh is uſually cut, then give him three or four cuts or ſcotches with your knife, and broil him on Char-cole or Wood-cole that are free from ſmoke, and all the time he is a broyling baſte him with the beſt ſweet butter, and good ſtore of ſalt mixt with it; and to this adde a little Time cut exceeding ſmall, or bruiſed into the butter. The Cheven thus dreſt hath the watrie taſte taken away, for which ſo many except againſt him.

him. Thus was the Cheven dreſt that you liked ſo well, and commended ſo much. But note again, that if this Chub that you ate of had been kept till to morrow, he had not been worth a ruſh. And remember that his throat be very clean, I ſay very clean, and his bodie not waſht after he is gutted.

Wel Scholer, you ſee what pains I have taken to recover the loſt credit of the poor deſpiſed *Chub*. And now I will give you ſome rules how to catch him; and I am glad to enter you into the Art of fiſhing by catching a *Chub*, for there is no fiſh better to enter a young Angler, he is ſo eaſily caught, but then it muſt be this particular way.

Go to the ſame hole in which I caught my *Chub*, where, in moſt hot daies you will find a dozen or twenty Chevens floting near the top of the water, get two or three Graſhoppers as you go over the meadow, and get ſecretly behind the tree, and ſtand as free from motion as is poſſible, then put a Graſhopper on your hook, and let your hook hang a quarter of a yard ſhort of the water, to which end you muſt reſt your rod on ſome bough of the tree, and it is likely the Chubs will ſink down towards the bottom of the water at the ſhadow of your Rod, (for a Chub is the fearfulleſt of fiſhes,) and will do ſo if but a bird flies over him, and makes the leaſt ſhadow on the

the water: but they will preſently riſe up to the top again, and there lie ſoaring till ſome ſhadow affrights them again: when they lie upon the top of the water, look out the beſt Chub, which you ſetting your ſelf in a fit place, may very eaſily ſee, and move your Rod as ſoftly as a Snaile moves, to that Chub you intend to catch; let your bait fall gently upon the water three or four inches before him, and he will infallibly take the bait, and you will be as ſure to catch him: for he is one of the leather-mouth'd Fiſhes, of which a hook does ſcarce ever loſe his hold: and therefore give him play enough before you offer to take him out of the water. Go your way preſently, take my rod, and do as I bid you, and I will ſit down and mend my tackling till you return back.

Ven. Truly, my loving Maſter, you have offered me as faire as I could wiſh. Ile go and obſerve your directions.

Look you, Maſter, what I have done, that which joies my heart, caught juſt ſuch another *Chub* as yours was.

Piſc. Marrie, and I am glad of it: I am like to have a towardly Scholer of you. I now ſee, that with advice and practice you will make an *Angler* in a ſhort time. Have but a love to it and ile warrant you.

Venat. But Maſter, What if I could not have found a *Graſhopper?*

Piſc.

Piſc. Then I may tell you, that a *black ſnail*, with his belly ſlit, to ſhew his white; or a piece of ſoft *cheeſe* will uſually do as well: nay, ſometimes a *worm*, or any kind of *fly*, as the *Ant-fly*, the *Fleſh-fly* or *Wall-fly*, or the *Dor* or *Beetle*, (which you may find under a Cow-turd) or a *Bob*, which you will find in the ſame place, and in time will be a Beetle, it is a ſhort white worm, like to, and bigger then a Gentle, or a *Cod-worm*, or a *Caſe-worm*, any of theſe will do very well to Fiſh in ſuch a manner. And after this manner you may catch a *Trout* in a hot evening: when as you walk by a Brook, and ſhall ſee or hear him leap at flies, then if you get a *Graſhopper*, put it on your hook, with your line about two yards long, ſtanding behinde a buſh or tree where his hole is, and make your bait ſtir up and down on the top of the water; you may, if you ſtand cloſe be ſure of a bit, but not ſure to catch him, for he is not a leather-mouthed Fiſh: and after this manner you may Fiſh for him with almoſt any kind of live flie, but eſpecially with a *Graſhopper*.

Venat. But before you go further, I pray good Maſter, what mean you by a leather-mouthed Fiſh?

Piſc. By a leather-mouthed Fiſh, I mean ſuch as have their teeth in their throat, as the *Chub* or *Cheven*, and ſo the *Barbel*, the *Gudgeon* and *Carp*, and divers others have; and the hook being

being ſtuck into the leather or skin of ſuch Fiſh does very ſeldom or never loſe its hold: But on the contrary, a *Pike*, a *Pearch* or *Trout*, and ſo ſome other Fiſh which have not their teeth in their throats, but in their mouthes, (which you ſhall obſerve to be very full of bones, and the skin very thin, and little of it:) I ſay, of theſe Fiſh the hook never takes ſo ſure hold, but you often loſe the Fiſh unleſs he have gorg'd it.

Ven. I thank you good Maſter for this obſervation; but now what ſhall be done with my *Chub* or *Cheven*, that I have caught?

Piſc. Marrie Sir, it ſhall be given away to ſome poor body, for Ile warrant you Ile give you a *Trout* for your ſupper: and it is good beginning of your Art to offer your firſt fruits to the poor, who will both thank God and you for it, which I ſee by your ſilence you ſeem to conſent to. And for your willingneſs to part with it ſo charitably, I will alſo teach you more concerning Chub-Fiſhing: you are to note, that in *March* and *April* he is uſually taken with wormes; in *May*, and *June* and *July* he will bite at any *fly*, or at *cherries*, or at *Beetles* with their legs and wings cut off, or at any kind of *Snail*, or at the black *Bee* that breeds in clay walls; and he never refuſes a Graſhopper on the top of a ſwift ſtream, nor at the bottom the young *humble-bee* that breeds in long graſſe, and

and are ordinarily found by the Mower of it. In *August*, and in the cooler moneths a yellow *paste*, made of the strongest cheese, and pounded in a Morter with a little butter and saffron (so much of it as being beaten small will turn it to a lemmon colour.) And some make a paste for the Winter moneths, at which time the Chub is accounted best (for then it is observed, that the forked bones are lost or turned into a kind of gristle, (especially if he be baked) with a paste made of cheese and Turpentine; he will bite also at a Minnow or Penk as a Trout will: of which I shall tell you more hereafter, and at divers other baits. But take this for a rule, that in hot weather he is to be fisht for towards the mid-water, or nearer the top; and in colder weather nearer the bottom. And if you Fish for him on the top, with a Beetle or any *fly*, then be sure to let your line be very long, and to keep out of sight. And having told you that his Spawne is excellent, and that the head of a large Cheven, the throat being well washt is the best part of him, I will say no more of this Fish at the present, but wish you may catch the next you Fish for.

And now my next observation and direction shall be concerning the *Trout* (which I love to angle for above any Fish) but lest you may judge me too nice in urging to have the Chub dresst so presently after he is taken, I will commend

mend to your consideration how curious former times have been in the like kind.

You shall read in *Seneca* his Natural Questions (*Lib. 3. cap. 17.*) that the Ancients were so curious in the newness of their Fish, that that seemed not new enough that was not put alive into the guests hand; and he saies that to that end, they did usually keep them living in glass-bottels in their Dining rooms; and they did glory much in their entertaining of friends to have that Fish taken from under their table alive, that was instantly to be fed upon. And he saies, they took a great pleasure to see their Mullets change to severall colours when they were dying. But enough of this, for I doubt I have stayed too long from giving you some observations of the *Trout*, and how to Fish for him, which shall take up the next of my spare time.

CHAP. IV.

Observations of the nature and breeding of the Trout, and how to Fish for him. And the Milk-maids Song.

Pisc. THe *Trout* is a Fish highly valued, both in this and forraign *Nations*; he may be justly said, (as the old Poets said of Wine, and we English say of Venison) to be a generous Fish: a Fish that is so like the *Buck*, that he also has his seasons, for it is observed, that he comes in and goes out of season with the *Stag* and *Buck*. *Gesner* saies, his name is of a Germane off-spring, and saies, he is a Fish that feeds clean and purely, in the swiftest streams, and on the hardest gravel; and that he may justly contend with all fresh water-Fish, as the Mullet may with all Sea-Fish for precedencie and daintiness of taste, and that being in right season, the most dainty palates have allowed precedencie to him.

And before I go farther in my Discourse, let me tell you, that you are to observe, that as there be some *barren Does*, that are good in Summer, so there be some *barren Trouts* that are good in winter; but there are not many that are so, for usually they be in their perfection

ſection in the moneth of *May*, and decline with the *Buck*. Now you are to take notice, that in ſeverall Countries, as in *Germany* and in other parts, compar'd to ours, Fiſh do differ much in their bigneſſe, and ſhape, and other waies, and ſo do *Trouts*; it is well known that in the Lake *Lemon*, (the Lake of *Geneva*,) there are *Trouts* taken of three Cubits long, as is affirmed by *Geſner*, a Writer of good credit: and *Mercator* ſaies, the *Trouts* that are taken in the Lake of *Geneva*, are a great part of the Merchandize of that famous City. And you are further to know, that there be certain waters that breed *Trouts*, remarkable, both for their number and ſmalneſs. I know a little Brook in *Kent* that breeds them to a number incredible, and you may take them twentie or fortie in an hour, but none greater then about the ſize of a *Gudgion*: There are alſo in divers rivers, ſpecially that relate to, or be near to the Sea, (as *Wincheſter*, or the *Thames* about *Windſor*) a little *Trout* called a *Samlet* or *Skegger Trout* (in both which places I have caught twentie or fortie at a ſtanding) that will bite as faſt and as freely as *Minnowes*; theſe be by ſome taken to be young *Salmons*, but in thoſe waters they never grow to be bigger then a *Herring*.

There is alſo in *Kent*, near to *Canterbury*, a *trout*, (called there a *Fordidge trout*) a *trout* (that

bears the name of the Town where it is usually caught) that is accounted the rarest of Fish, many of them near the bigness of a *Salmon*, but known by their different colour, and in their best season cut very white; and none of these have been known to be caught with an Angle, unless it were one that was caught by Sir *George Hastings*, (an excellent Angler, and now with God) and he hath told me, he thought that *trout* bit not for hunger, but wantonness; and it is the rather to be believed, because both he then, and many others before him, have been curious to search into their bellies, what the food was by which they lived; and have found out nothing by which they might satisfie their curiositie.

Concerning which you are to take notice, that it is reported by good Authors, that there is a Fish that hath not any mouth, but lives by taking breath by the porings of her Gills, and feeds, and is nourished by no man knows what; and this may be believed of the *Fordidge trout*, which (as it is said of the *Stork*, that he knows his season, so he) knows his times, (I think almost his day) of coming first into that River out of the Sea, where he lives (and it is like) feeds nine moneths of the Year, and about three in the River of *Fordidge*. And you are to note, that the Townsmen are very punctual in observing the very time of beginning to fish for

for them; and boaſt much that their River affords a Trout that exceeds all others. And juſt ſo doth *Suſſex* boaſt of ſeveral Fiſh, as namely a *Shelſey Cockle*, a *Chicheſter Lobſter*, an *Arundel Mullet*, and an *Amerly Trout*.

And now for ſome confirmation of the *Fordidge* Trout, you are to know that this Trout is thought to eat nothing in the freſh water; and it may be the better believed, becauſe it is well known that *Swallows* which are not ſeen to flie in *England* for ſix moneths in the Year, (but about *Michaelmas* leave us for a hotter Climate;) yet ſome of them that have been left behind their fellows, have been found (many thouſands at a time) in hollow trees, where they have been obſerved to live and ſleep out the whole Winter without meat; and ſo *Albertus* obſerves that there is one kind of *Frog* that hath her mouth naturally ſhut up about the end of *Auguſt*, and that ſhe lives ſo all the Winter, and though it be ſtrange to ſome, yet it is known to too many among us to be doubted.

Vide Sir Fra. Bacon exper. 899.

See Topſel of Frogs.

And ſo much for theſe *Fordidge trouts*, which never afford an *angler* ſport, but either live their time of being in the freſh water by their meat formerly gotten in the Sea, (not unlike the *Swallow* or *Frog*) or by the vertue of the freſh water onely; or as the birds of *Paradiſe*,

and the *Camelion* are ſaid to live by the *ſun* and the *ayre*.

There is alſo in *Northumberland* a *trout* called a *Bull-trout*, of a much greater length and bigneſs than any in theſe Southern parts: and there is in many Rivers that relate to the Sea *Salmon-trouts*, as much different from others, both in ſhape and in their ſpots, as we ſee ſheep differ one from another in their ſhape and bigneſs, and in the fineneſs of their wool: and certainly, as ſome paſtures do breed larger ſheep, ſo do ſome Rivers, by reaſon of the ground over which they run, breed larger *trouts*.

Now the next thing that I will commend to your conſideration is, that the *trout* is of a more ſudden growth than other Fiſh: concerning which you are alſo to take notice, that he lives not ſo long as the *Pearch* and divers other Fiſhes do, as Sir *Francis Bacon* hath obſerved in his Hiſtorie of Life and Death.

And next you are to take notice, that he is not like the *Crocadile*, which if he lives never ſo long, yet alwayes thrives till his death: but 'tis not ſo with the Trout, for after he is come to his full growth, he declines in his body, but keeps his bigneſs, or thrives onely in his head till his death. And you are to know, that he will about (eſpecially before) the time of his Spawning, get almoſt miraculouſly through

Weires

Weires and *Flood-gates* againſt the ſtream, even through ſuch high and ſwift places as is almoſt incredible. Next, that the *Trout* uſually Spawns about *October* or *November*, but in ſome Rivers a litte ſooner or latter; which is the more obſervable, becauſe moſt other fiſh Spawne in the Spring or Summer, when the Sun hath warmed both the earth and water, and made it fit for generation. And you are to note, that he continues many moneths out of ſeaſon; for it may be obſerved of the Trout, that he is like the Buck or the Oxe, that will not be fat in many months, though he go in the very ſame paſtures that horſes do which will be fat in one month; and ſo you may obſerve, that moſt other Fiſhes recover ſtrength, and grow ſooner fat and in ſeaſon then the Trout doth.

And next, you are to note, that till the Sun gets to ſuch a height as to warm the earth and the water, the *Trout* is ſick, and lean, and lowſie, and unwholſom: for you ſhall in winter find him to have a big head, and then to be lank, and thin, and lean; at which time many of them have ſticking on them Sugs, or *Trout* lice, which is a kind of a worm, in ſhape like a clove or pin, with a big head, and ſticks cloſe to him and ſucks his moiſture; thoſe I think the *Trout* breeds himſelf, and never thrives till he free himſelf from them, which is till warm weather comes, and then as he growes ſtronger,

he gets from the dead, ſtill water, into the ſharp ſtreams, and the gravel, and there rubs off theſe worms or lice, and then as he grows ſtronger, ſo he gets him into ſwifter and ſwifter ſtreames, and there lies at the watch for any flie or Minnow that comes near to him; and he eſpecially loves the *May-flie* which is bred of the *Cod-worms* or *Caddis*; and theſe make the trout bold and luſtie, and he is uſually fatter and better meat at the end of that month, then at any time of the year.

Now you are to know, that it is obſerved, that uſually the beſt *trouts* are either red or yellow, though ſome (as the *Fordidg Trout*) be white and yet good; but that is not uſuall: and it is a note obſervable, that the female *Trout* hath uſually a leſſe head, and a deeper body then the male *Trout*; and is uſually the better meat: and note that a hog back, and a little head to any fiſh, either *Trout*, *Salmon*, or other fiſh, is a ſign that that fiſh is in ſeaſon.

But yet you are to note, that as you ſee ſome Willows or Palm trees bud and bloſſom ſooner then others do, ſo ſome Trouts be in ſome rivers ſooner in ſeaſon; and as ſome Hollys or Oaks are longer before they caſt their leaves, ſo are ſome Trouts in ſome Rivers longer before they go out of ſeaſon.

And you are to note, that there are ſeverall kinds of Trouts, though they all go under that ge-

generall name: juſt as there be tame and wild *Pigeons*, and of tame there be *Cropers*, *Carryers*, *Runts*, (and too many to name) which all differ, and ſo do *Trouts* in their bigneſſe, ſhape and colour; the great Kentiſh Hens may be an inſtance compared to other Hens. And doubtleſſe there is a kind of ſmall Trout, which will never thrive to be big, that breeds very many more then others do that be of a larger ſize; which you may rather believe, if you conſider that the little *Wren* and *Titmouſe* will have twentie young at a time, when uſually the noble *Hawk*, or the Muſical *Thraſſel* or *Black-bird* exceed not four or five.

And now I ſhall trie my skill to catch a Trout, and at my next walking either this evening, or to morrow morning I will give you direction how you your ſelf ſhall fiſh for him.

Venat. Truſt me, Maſter, I ſee now it is a harder matter to catch a *trout* then a *Chub*: for I have put on patience, and followed you this two hours, and not ſeen a Fiſh ſtir, neither at your Minnow nor your Worm.

Piſc. Well Scholer, you muſt indure worſe luck ſometime, or you will never make a good Angler. But what ſay you now? there is a *trout* now, and a good one too, if I can but hold him, and two or three turnes more will tire him: Now you ſee he lies ſtill, and the ſleight is to land him: Reach me that Land-

ing

ing Net: So (Sir) now he is mine own, what say you now? is not this worth all my labour and your patience?

Venat. On my word Master, this is a gallant *Trout*, what shall we do with him?

Pisc. Marrie e'en eat him to supper: We'l go to my Hostis, from whence we came; she told me, as I was going out of door, that my brother *Peter*, a good Angler and a chearful companion, had sent word he would lodge there to night, and bring a friend with him. My Hostis has two beds, and I know you and I may have the best: we'l rejoice with my brother *Peter* and his friend, tell tales, or sing Ballads, or make a Catch, or find some harmelesse sport to content us, and passe away a little time without offence to God or man.

Venat. A match, good Master, lets go to that house, for the linnen looks white, and smells of Lavender, and I long to lie in a pair of sheets that smell so: lets be going, good Master, for I am hungrie again with fishing.

Pisc. Nay, stay a little, good Scholer, I caught my last *Trout* with a Worm, now I will put on a Minow and trie a quarter of an hour about yonder trees for another, and so walk towards our lodging. Look you Scholer, thereabout we shall have a bit presently, or not at all: Have with you (Sir!) on my word I have him. Oh it is a great loggerheaded

Chub;

Chub; Come, hang him upon that Willow twig, and lets be going. But turn out of the way a little, good Scholer, towards yonder high hedg: We'll ſit whilſt this ſhowre falls ſo gently upon the teeming earth, and gives yet a ſweeter ſmell to the lovely flowers that adorn theſe verdant Meadowes.

Look, under that broad *Beech-tree*, I ſate down when I was laſt this way a fiſhing, and the birds in the adjoining Grove ſeemed to have a friendly contention with an Eccho, with an Eccho whoſe dead voice ſeemed to live in a hollow cave, near to the brow of that Primroſe-hill, there I ſate viewing the ſilver-ſtreams glide ſilently towards their center, the tempeſtuous Sea: yet ſometimes oppoſed by rugged roots, and pibble ſtones, which broke their waves, and turned them into foam: and ſometimes I beguil'd time by viewing the harmleſs Lambs, ſome leaping ſecurely in the cool ſhade, whilſt others ſported themſelves in the chearful Sun: and ſaw others craving comfort from the ſwoln Udders of their bleating Dams. As I thus ſate theſe and other ſights had ſo fully poſſeſt my ſoul with content, that I thought as the Poet has happily expreſt it:

I was for that time lifted above earth;
And poſſeſt joies not promis'd in my birth.

As I left this place, and entered into the next field, a ſecond pleaſure entertained me, 'twas

a

a handſom milk-maid, that had caſt away all care, and ſung like a *Nightingale*; her voice was good, and the Ditty fitted for it, 'twas that ſmooth ſong which was made by *Kit. Marlow*, now at leaſt fiftie years ago: and the Milk-maids Mother ſung an anſwer to it, which was made by Sir *Walter Raleigh* in his younger daies.

They were old faſhioned Poetrie, but choicely good, I think much better then the ſtrong lines that are now in faſhion in this critical age. Look yonder, on my word, yonder they be both a milking again, I will give her the *Chub*, and perſwade them to ſing thoſe two ſongs to us.

God ſpeeed good woman, I have been a Fiſhing, and am going to *Bleak-Hall* to my bed, and having caught more Fiſh then will ſup my ſelf and my friend, I will beſtow this upon you and your daughter, for I uſe to ſell none.

Milkw. Marrie God requite you Sir, and we'l eat it chearfully: and if you come this way a Fiſhing two moneths hence, a grace of God Ile give you a Sillibub of new Verjuice, in a new made Hay-cock for it, and my *Maudlin* ſhall ſing you one of her beſt *Ballads*, for ſhe and I both love all *Anglers*, they be ſuch honeſt, civil, quiet men; in the mean time will you drink a draught of *Red Cowes milk*, you ſhall have it freely. *Pſc.*

Pisc. No, I thank you, but I pray do us a courteſie that ſhall ſtand you and your daughter in nothing, and we will think our ſelves ſtill ſomething in your debt; it is but to ſing us a Song, that was ſung by you and your daughter, when I laſt paſt over this Meadow, about eight or nine daies ſince.

Milk. What Song was it, I pray? was it, *Come ſhepheards deck your heards*, or, *As at noon* Dulcina *reſted*; or Philida *flouts me*, or Chevie Chaſe?

Pisc. No, it is none of thoſe: it is a Song that your daughter ſung the firſt part, and you ſung the anſwer to it.

Milk. O I know it now, I learn'd the firſt part in my golden age, when I was about the age of my poor daughter; and the latter part, which indeed fits me beſt now, but two or three years ago, when the cares of the world began to take hold of me: but you ſhall, God willing, hear them both, and ſung as well as we can, for we both love Anglers. Come *Maudlin*, ſing the firſt part to the Gentlemen with a merrie heart, and Ile ſing the ſecond when you have done.

The Milk-maids Song.

Come live with me and be my Love,
And we will all the pleaſures prove

That

That valleys, groves, or hills, or fields,
Or woods and steepy mountains yeelds.

Where we will sit upon the rocks,
And see the Shepherds feed our flocks,
By shallow rivers, *to whose falls*
Melodious birds sing madrigals.

And I will make thee beds of Roses,
And then a thousand fragrant Posies,
A cap of Flowers, and a Kirtle
Imbroydered all with leaves of Mirtle.

A Gown made of the finest wool
Which from our pretty Lambs we pull;
Slippers lin'd choicely for the cold,
With buckles of the purest gold.

A Belt of Straw and Ivye-buds,
With Coral clasps and Amber studs:
And if these pleasures may thee move,
Come live with me and be my Love.

Thy silver dishes for thy meat,
As precious as the gods do eat,
Shall on an Ivory table be
Prepar'd each day for thee and me.

The Shepherds Swains shall dance and sing
For thy delight each May morning:

If these delights thy mind may move,
Then live with me and be my Love.

Venat. Trust me, Master, it is a choice Song, and sweetly sung by honest *Maudlin*. I now see it was not without cause that our good Queen *Elizabeth* did so often wish her self a Milk-maid all the moneth of *May*, because they are not troubled with cares, but sing sweetly all the day, and sleep securely all the night: and without doubt honest, innocent, pretty *Maudlin* does so. I'le bestow Sir *Thomas Overbury's* Milk-maids wish upon her, *That she may dye in the Spring, and have good store of flowers stuck round about her winding-sheet.*

The Milk-maids Mothers Answer.

If all the world and Love were young,
And truth in every Shepherds tongue,
These pretty pleasures might me move
To live with thee and be thy Love.

But time drives flocks from field to fold
When rivers rage, and rocks grow cold,
And Philomel *becometh dumb,*
The Rest complains of cares to come.

The flowers do fade, and wanton fields
To wayward Winter reckoning yeelds.

A honey tongue, a heart of gall,
Is fancies ſpring, but ſorrows fall.

Thy gowns, thy ſhooes, thy beds of roſes,
Thy cap, thy kirtle, and thy poſies,
Soon break, ſoon wither, ſoon forgotten,
In folly ripe, in reaſon rotten.

Thy Belt of Straw and Ivye-buds,
Thy Coral claſps and Amber ſtuds,
All theſe in me no means can move
To come to thee and be thy Love.

What ſhould we talk of dainties then,
Of better meat than's fit for men?
Theſe are but vain: that's onely good
Which God hath bleſt, and ſent for food.

But could Youth laſt, and love ſtill breed,
Had joyes no date, nor age no need;
Then thoſe delights my mind might move,
To live with thee and be thy Love.

Piſc. Well ſung, good Woman, I thank you, I'le give you another diſh of Fiſh one of theſe dayes, and then beg another Song of you. Come Scholer, let *Maudlin* alone, do not you offer to ſpoil her voice. Look, yonder comes mine Hoſteſs to call us to ſupper. How now? is my brother *Peter* come?

Hoſt.

Hoſt. Yes, and a friend with him, they are both glad to hear you are in theſe parts, and long to ſee you, and are hungrie, and long to be at ſupper.

CHAP. V.

More directions how to fiſh for, and how to make for the Trout an artificial Minnow and Fly; and ſome merriment.

Piſc. WEll met Brother *Peter*, I heard you and a friend would lodge here to night, and that hath made me and my friend caſt to lodge here too: My friend is one that would fain be a brother of the *angle*, he hath been an *angler* but this day, and I have taught him how to catch a *Chub* by *daping* with a *Graſhopper*, and he hath caught a luſtie one of nineteen inches long. But, I pray Brother, who is it that is your companion?

Peter. Brother *Piſcator*, my friend is an honeſt Countrie-man, and his name is *Coridon*, a moſt downright, wittie, merrie companion that met me here purpoſely to eat a *trout*, and to be pleaſant, and I have not yet wet my Line ſince I came from home: but I will fit him to morrow with a *trout* for his

breakfaſt, if the weather be any thing like.

Piſc. Nay, brother, you ſhall not delay him ſo long, for look you, here is a *Trout*

will fill ſix reaſonable bellies. Come Hoſteſs, dreſs it preſently, and get us what other meat the houſe will afford, and give us ſome of your beſt *Barley-wine*, the good liquor that our honeſt Forefathers did uſe to drink of, which preſerved their health, and made them live ſo long, and to do ſo many good deeds.

Peter. On my word this *Trout* is in perfect ſeaſon. Come, I thank you, and here is a hearty draught to you, and to all the brothers of the Angle whereſoever they be, and to my young brothers good fortune to morrow: I will furniſh him with a Rod, if you will furniſh him with the reſt of the Tackling, we will ſet him up and make him a Fiſher.

And I will tell him one thing for his incou-

ragement

ragement, that his fortune hath made him happie to be a Scholer to such a Master; a Master that knows as much both of the nature and breeding of fish as any man: and can also tell him as well how to catch and cook them, from the *Minnow* to the *Salmon*, as any that I ever met withall.

Pisc. Trust me, brother *Peter*, I find my Scholer to be so sutable to my own humour, which is to be free and pleasant, and civilly merrie, that my resolution is to hide nothing that I know from him. Believe me, Scholer, this is my resolution; and so here's to you: a hearty draught, and to all that love us, and the honest Art of Angling.

Ven. Trust me, good Master, you shall not sow your seed in barren ground, for I hope to return you an increase answerable to your hopes; but however you shall find me obedient, and thankful, and serviceable to my best abilitie.

Pisc. 'Tis enough, honest Scholer, come lets to supper. Come my friend *Coridon* this *Trout* looks lovely, it was twentie two inches when it was taken, and the belly of it looked some part of it as yellow as a Marigold, and part of it as white as a lilly, and yet me thinks it looks better in this good sawce.

Cor. Indeed honest friend, it looks well, and tastes well, I thank you for it, and so does my

friend *Peter*, or else he is to blame.

Pet. Yes, and so I do, we all thank you, and when we have supt, I will get my friend *Coridon* to sing you a Song for requital.

Cor. I will sing a song if any body will sing another; else, to be plain with you, *I will sing none*: I am none of those that sing for meat, but for companie: I say, *'Tis merrie in Hall, when men sing all.*

Pisc. I'l promise you I'l sing a song that was lately made at my request by Mr. *William Basse*, one that hath made the choice Songs of the *Hunter in his careere*, and of *Tom of Bedlam*, and many others of note; and this that I will sing is in praise of Angling.

Cor. And then mine shall be the praise of a Countrie mans life: What will the rest sing of?

Pet. I will promise you I will sing another Song in praise of Angling to morrow night, for we will not part till then, but Fish to morrow, and sup together, and the next day every man leave Fishing, and fall to his businesse.

Venat. 'Tis a match, and I will provide you a Song or a Catch against then too, which shall give some addition of mirth to the company; for we will be civil and merrie too.

Pisc. 'Tis a match my Masters, lets ev'n say Grace, and turn to the fire, drink the other cup to wet our whistles, and so sing away all sad thoughts.

Come

Come on my Masters; who begins? I think it is best to draw cuts, and avoid contention.

Pet. It is a match. Look, the shortest cut fals to *Coridon.*

Cor. Well then, I will begin, for I hate contention.

CORIDONS Song.

Oh the sweet contentment
The country man doth find!
high trololie lollie loe
high trololie lee,
That quiet contemplation
possesseth all my mind:
Then care away,
and wend along with me.

For Courts are full of flattery
As hath too oft been tri'd;
high trololie lollie loe, &c.
The City full of wantonnesse,
and both are full of pride:
Then care away, &c.

But oh the honest country man
Speaks truly from his heart,
high trololie lollie loe, &c.
His pride is in his tillage,
his horses and his cart:
Then care away, &c.

Our cloathing is good sheep skins,
Gray russet for our wives,
high trololie lollie loe, &c.
'Tis warmth and not gay clothing
that doth prolong our lives:
Then care away, &c.

The ploughman, though he labor hard,
Yet on the Holy-Day,
high trololie lollie loe, &c.
No Emperour *so merrily*
does passe his time away:
Then care away, &c.

To recompence our tillage,
The Heavens *afford us showrs;*
high trololie lollie loe, &c.
And for our sweet refreshments
the earth affords us bowers:
Then care away, &c.

The Cuckoe *and the* Nightingale
Full merrily do sing,
high trololie lollie loe, &c.
And with their pleasant roundelaies
bid welcome to the Spring.
Then care away, &c.

This is not half the happinesse
the country man injoies;
high trololie lollie loe, &c.

Though

Though others think they have as much,
yet he that ſaies ſo lies:
Then come away, turn
Country man with me.

Jo: Chalkhill.

Piſc. Well ſung *Coridon*, this Song was ſung with mettle, and it was choicely fitted to the occaſion; I ſhall love you for it as long as I know you: I would you were a brother of the Angle, for a companion that is chearful, and free from ſwearing and ſcurrilous diſcourſe, is worth gold. I love ſuch mirth as does not make friends aſhamed to look upon one another next morning; nor men (that cannot well bear it) to repent the money they ſpend when they be warmed with drink: and take this for a rule, You may pick out ſuch times and ſuch companies, that you may make your ſelves merrier for a little then a great deal of money; for *'Tis the company and not the charge that makes the feaſt:* and ſuch a companion you prove, I thank you for it.

But I will not complement you out of the debt that I owe you, and therefore I will begin my Song, and wiſh it may be as well liked.

The Anglers Song.

As inward love breeds outward talk,
The Hound *some praise, and some the* Hawk;
Some better pleas'd with private sport,
Use Tenis, *some a* Mistress *court:*
But these delights I neither wish,
Nor envy, while I freely fish.

Who hunts, *doth oft in danger ride;*
Who hawks, *lures oft both far and wide;*
Who uses games, *shall often prove*
A loser; but who falls in love,
Is fettered in fond Cupids *snare:*
My Angle breeds me no such care.

Of Recreation there is none
So free as Fishing is alone;
All other pastimes do no less
Than mind and body both possesse:
My hand alone my work can do,
So I can fish and study too.

I care not, I, to fish in seas,
Fresh rivers best my mind do please,
Whose sweet calm course I contemplate,
And seek in life to imitate:
In civil bounds I fain would keep,
And for my past offences weep.

And when the timorous Trout *I wait*
To take, and he devours my bait,
How poor a thing ſometimes I find
Will captivate a greedy mind:
And when none bite, I praiſe the wiſe,
Whom vain allurements ne're ſurpriſe.

But yet though while I fiſh, I faſt,
I make good fortune my repaſt;
And thereunto my friend invite,
In whom I more than that delight:
Who is more welcom to my diſh,
Then to my angle was my fiſh.

As well content no prize to take,
As uſe of taken prize to make:
For ſo our Lord was pleaſed when
He Fiſhers made Fiſhers of men:
Where (which is in no other game)
A man may fiſh and praiſe his Name.

The firſt men that our Saviour dear
Did chuſe to wait upon him here,
Bleſt Fiſhers were, and fiſh the laſt
Food was, that he on earth did taſte.
I therefore ſtrive to follow thoſe,
Whom he to follow him hath choſe.

Cor. Well ſung brother, you have paid your debt in good coine, we Anglers are all beholding to the good man that made this Song. Come Hoſteſs, give us more Ale, and lets drink to him.

And now lets every one go to bed that we may riſe early; but firſt lets pay our reckoning, for I will have nothing to hinder me in the morning, for my purpoſe is to prevent the Sunriſing.

Pet. A match: Come *Coridon*, you are to be my Bed-fellow: I know, brother, you and your Scholer will lie together; but where ſhall we meet to morrow night? for my friend *Coridon* and I will go up the water towards *Ware*.

Piſc. And my Scholer and I will go down towards *Waltam*.

Cor. Then lets meet here, for here are freſh ſheets that ſmell of *Lavender*, and I am ſure we cannot expect better meat, or better uſage in any place.

Pet. 'Tis a match. Good night to every body.

Piſc. And ſo ſay I.

Venat. And ſo ſay I.

Piſc. Good morrow good Hoſteſs, I ſee my brother *Peter* is ſtill in bed: Come give my Scholer and me a Mornings-drink, and a bit of meat to breakfaſt, and be ſure to get a good diſh of meat or two againſt ſupper, for we ſhall come

come home as hungry as Hawks. Come Scholer, lets be going.

Venat. Well now, good Maſter, as we walk towards the River give me direction, according to your promiſe, how I ſhall fiſh for a *Trout*.

Piſc. My honeſt Scholer, I will take this very convenient opportunity to do it.

The Trout is uſually caught with a *worm* or a *Minnow*, (which ſome call a *Penke*) or with a *flie*, *viz.* either a *natural* or an *artificial* flie: concerning which three I will give you ſome obſervations and directions.

And firſt for Worms: Of theſe there be very many ſorts, ſome bred onely in the earth, as the *Earth-worm*; others of or amongſt Plants, as the *Dug-worm*; and others bred either out of excrements, or in the bodies of living creatures, as in the horns of Sheep or Deer; or ſome of dead fleſh, as the *magot* or *gentle*, and others.

Now theſe be moſt of them particularly good for particular Fiſhes: but for the *Trout* the *dew-worm*, (which ſome alſo call the *Lob-worm*) and the *Brandling* are the chief; and eſpecially the firſt for a great Trout, and the later for a leſs. There be alſo of *Lob-worms* ſome called *ſquirel-tayles*, (a worm that has a red head, a ſtreak down the back, and a broad tail) which are noted to be the beſt, becauſe they are the toughest and moſt lively, and live longeſt

geſt in the water: for you are to know, that a dead worm is but a dead bait, and like to catch nothing, compared to a lively, quick, ſtirring worm: And for a *Brandling*, he is uſually found in an old dunghil, or ſome very rotten place near to it: but moſt uſually in cow-dung or hogs-dung, rather then horſe-dung, which is ſomewhat too hot and drie for that worm. But the beſt of them are to be found in the bark of the Tanners, which they caſt up in heaps after they have uſed it about their leather.

There are alſo divers other kinds of worms, which for colour and ſhape alter even as the ground out of which they are got, as the *marſh-worm*, the *tag-tail*, the *flag-worm*, the *dock-worm*, the *oak-worm*, the *gilt-tayle*, the *twachel* or *lob-worm*, (which of all other is the moſt excellent bait for a *Salmon*) and too many to name, even as many ſorts, as ſome think there be of ſeveral hearbs or ſhrubs, or of ſeveral kinds of birds in the aire; of which I ſhall ſay no more, but tell you, that what worms ſoever you Fiſh with, are the better for being long kept before they be uſed; and in caſe you have not been ſo provident, then the way to cleanſe and ſcoure them quickly, is to put them all night in water, if they be *Lob-worms*, and then put them into your bag with fennel: but you muſt not put your Brandling above an hour in water, and then put them into fennel for ſudden uſe: but if you

you have time, and purpoſe to keep them long, then they be beſt preſerved in an earthen pot with good ſtore of *Moſſe*, which is to be freſh every three or four dayes in Summer, and every week or eight daies in Winter; or at leaſt the moſſe taken from them, and clean waſhed, and wrung betwixt your hands till it be drie, and then put it to them again. And when your worms, eſpecially the Brandling begins to be ſick, and loſe of his bigneſſe, then you may recover him, by putting a little milk or cream (about a ſpoonfull in a day) into them by drops on the moſſe; and if there be added to the cream an egge beaten and boiled in it, then it will both fatten and preſerve them long. And note that when the *knot* which is near to the middle of the *brandling* begins to ſwell, then he is ſick, and if he be not well look'd to is near dying. And for moſſe, you are to note, that there be divers kinds of it, which I could name to you, but will onely tell you, that that which is likeſt a *Bucks horn* is the beſt, except it be white moſſe, which grows on ſome heaths, and is hard to be found. And note, that in a very drie time, when you are put to an extremity for worms, Walnut-tree leaves ſqueez'd into water, or ſalt in water, to make it bitter or ſalt, and then that water poured on the ground, where you ſhall ſee worms are uſed to riſe in the night, will make them to appear above ground preſently.

And

And now, I shall shew you how to bait your hook with a worm, so as shall prevent you from much trouble, and the loss of many a hook too; when you Fish for a *Trout* with a running line: that is to say, when you fish for him by hand at the ground, I will direct you in this as plainly as I can, that you may not mistake.

Suppose it be a big Lob-worm, put your hook into him somewhat above the middle, and out again a little below the middle: having so done, draw your worm above the arming of your hook, (but note that at the entring of your hook it must not be at the head-end of the worm, but at the taile-end of him, that the point of your hook may come out toward the head-end) and having drawn him above the arming of your hook, then put the point of your hook again into the very head of the worm, till it come near to the place where the point of the hook first came out: and then draw back that part of the worm that was above the shank or arming of your hook, and so fish with it. And if you mean to fish with two worms, then put the second on before you turn back the hooks-head of the first worm, you cannot lose above two or three worms before you attain to what I direct you; and having attain'd it, you will find it very useful; and thank me for it: For you will run on the ground without tangling.

Now for the *Minnow* or *Penk*, he is easily found and caught in *March*, or in *April*, for then he appears in the Rivers, but Nature hath taught him to shelter and hide himself in the Winter

Winter in ditches that be near to the River, and there both to hide and keep himself warm in the mud or in the weeds, which rot not so soon as in a running River, in which place if he were in Winter, the distempered Floods that are usually in that season, would suffer him to take no rest, but carry him head-long to Mills and Weires to his confusion. And of these *Minnows*, first you are to know, that the biggest size is not the best; and next, that the middle size and the whitest are the best: and then you are to know, that your *Minnow* must be so put on your hook that it must turn round when 'tis drawn against the stream, and that it may turn nimbly, you must put it on a big-sized hook as I shall now direct you, which is thus. Put your hook in at his mouth and out at his gill, then having drawn your hook 2 or 3 inches beyond or through his gill, put it again into his mouth, and the point and beard out at his taile, and then tie the hook and his taile about very neatly with a white thred, which will make it the apter to turn quick in the water: that done pull back that part of your line which was slack when you put your hook into the *Minnow* the second time. I say pull that part of it back so that it shall fasten the head, so that the body of the *Minnow* shall be almost streight on your hook; this done, trie how it will turn by drawing it cross the water or against a stream,

ſtream, and if it do not turn nimbly, then turn the tail a little to the right or left hand, and trie againe till it turne quick; for if not, you are in danger to catch nothing, for knovv that it is impoſſible that it ſhould turn too quick: And you are yet to knovv, that in caſe you want a *Minnow*, then a ſmall *Loch*, or a *Stickle bag*, or any other ſmall Fiſh will ſerve as well: And you are yet to know, that you may ſalt and by that means keep them fit for uſe three or four daies or longer, and that of ſalt; bay ſalt is the beſt.

And here let me tell you, what many old Anglers know right well, that at ſome time, and in ſome waters a *Minnow* is not to be got, and therefore let me tell you, I have (which I will ſhew to you) an *artificial Minnow*, that will catch a Trout as well as an Artificial *Flie*, and it was made by a handſome Woman that had a fine hand and a live minnow lying by her: *the mould or body of the minnow was cloth, and wrought upon or over it thus with a needle: the back of it with very ſad French green ſilk, and paler green ſilk towards the belly, ſhadowed as perfectly as you can imagine, juſt as you ſee a Minnow; the belly was wrought alſo with a needle, and it was a part of it white ſilk, and another part of it with ſilver thred, the taile and fins were of a quil, which was ſhaven thin, the eyes were of two little black beads, and the head was ſo ſhadowed, and all of it ſo curiouſly wrought, and ſo exactly*

exactly dissembled, that it would beguile any sharpe sighted Trout in a swift stream. And this Minnow I will now shew you, and if you like it, lend it you, to have two or three made by it, for they be easily carryed about an Angler, and be of excellent use; for note, that a large Trout will come as fiercely at a Minnow, as the highest mettle Hawk doth seize on a Partridg, or a Greyhound on a Hare. I have been told, that 160 minnows have been found in a Trouts belly, either the Trout had devoured so many, or the Miller that gave it a friend of mine had forced them down his throat after he had taken him.

Now for *Flies*, which is the third bait wherewith Trouts are usually taken. You are to know, that there are as many sorts of Flies as there be of Fruits: I will name you but some of them, as the *dun-flye*, the *stone-flye*, the *red-flye*, the *moor-flye*, the *tawny-flye*, the *shell-flye*, the *cloudy*, or blackish flie, the *flag-flye*, the *vine-flye*: there be of flies, *Caterpillars*, and *Canker-flyes*, and *Bear-flyes*, and indeed too many either for me to name, or for you to remember: and their breeding is so various and wonderfull, that I might easily amaze my self, and tire you in a relation of them.

And yet I will exercise your promised patience by saying a little of the *Caterpillar* or the *Palmer-flye* or *worm*, that by them you may guesse what a work it were in a Discourse but

to run over those very many flies, worms, and little living creatures with which the Sun and Summer adorn and beautifie the River banks and meadows; both for the recreation and contemplation of us Anglers, and which (I think) my self enjoy more then any other man that is not of my profession.

Pliny holds an opinion, that many have their birth or being from a dew that in the Spring falls upon the leaves of trees; and that some kinds of them are from a dew left upon herbs or flowers; and others from a dew left upon Colworts or Cabbages: All which kinds of dews being thickned and condensed, are by the Suns generative heat most of them hatch'd, and in three daies made living creatures; and these of severall shapes and colours; some being hard and tough, some smooth and soft; some are horned in their head, some in their tail, some have none: some have hair, some none: some have sixteen feet, some lesse, and some have none, but (as our *Topsel* hath with great diligence observed) those which have none, move upon the earth or upon broad leaves, their motion being not unlike to the waves of the sea. Some of them he also observes to be bred of the egs of other Caterpillers, and that those in their time turne to be *Butter-flyes*: and again, that their egs turne the following yeer to be *Caterpillers*.

In his history of Serpents.

And

And ſom affirm, that every plant has his particular flye or Caterpiller, which it breeds and feeds. I have ſeen, and may therefore affirm it: a green Caterpiller, or worm, as big as a ſmall Peaſcod, which had fourteen legs, eight on the belly, four under the neck, and two neer the tail. It was found on a hedge of Privet, and was taken thence, and put into a large Box, and a little branch or two of Privet put to it, on which I ſaw it feed as ſharply as a dog gnawes a bone: it lived thus five or ſix daies, and thrived, and changed the colour two or three times, but by ſome neglect in the keeper of it, it then died and did not turn to a flye; but if it had lived, it had doubtleſſe turned to one of thoſe flies that ſome call flyes of prey, which thoſe that walk by the Rivers may in Summer, ſee faſten on ſmaller flyes, and I think make them their food. And 'tis obſervable that as there be theſe flies of prey which be very large, ſo there be others very little, created I think onely to feed them, and bred out of I know not what; whoſe life, they ſay, Nature intended not to exceed an hour, and yet that life is thus made ſhorter by other flies, or accident.

'Tis endleſs to tell you what the curious ſearchers into Natures productions have obſerved of theſe Worms and Flies: But yet I ſhall tell you what *Aldrovandus*, our *Topſel*, and others

ſay of the *Palmer-worm* or *Caterpillar*, That whereas others content themſelves to feed on particular herbs or leaves, (for moſt think thoſe very leaves that gave them life and ſhape, give them a particular feeding and nouriſhment, and that upon them they uſually abide) yet he obſerves, that this is called a *pilgrim* or *palmer-worm*, for his very wandring life and various food; not contenting himſelf (as others do) with any one certain place for his abode, nor any certain kind of herb or flower for his feeding; but will boldly and diſorderly wander up and downe, and not endure to be kept to a diet, or fixt to a particular place.

Nay, the very colour of *Caterpillars* are, as one has obſerved, very elegant and beautiful: I ſhall (for a taſte of the reſt) deſcribe one of them, which I will ſometime the next moneth ſhew you feeding on a Willow tree, and you ſhall find him punctually to anſwer this very deſcription; *His lips and mouth ſomewhat yellow, his eyes black as Jet, his forehead purple, his feet and hinder parts green, his tayl two forked and black, the whole body ſtain'd with a kind of red ſpots which run along the neck and ſhoulder-blade, not unlike the form of Saint* Andrew's *Croſſe, or the letter* X, *made thus croſſe-wiſe, and a white line drawn down his back to his tayl; all which adde much beauty to his whole body.* And it is to me obſervable, that at a fixed age this *Caterpiller* gives over to

eat

eat, and towards Winter comes to be covered over with a ſtrange ſhell or cruſt called an *Aurelia*, and ſo lives a kind of dead life, without eating all the Winter; and (as others of ſeveral kinds turn to be ſeveral kinds of flies and vermin the Spring following) ſo this *Caterpiller* then turns to be a *painted Butter-flye*.

View Sir Fra. Bacon exper. 728. & 90. in his Natural Hiſtory.

Come, come my Scholer, you ſee the River ſtops our morning walk, and I will alſo here ſtop my diſcourſe, onely as we ſit down under this *Honey-ſuckle* hedge, whilſt I look a Line to fit the Rod that our brother *Peter* hath lent you; I ſhall for a little confirmation of what I have ſaid, repeat the obſervation of *Du Bartas*:

God not contented to each kind to give,
And to infuſe the vertue generative,
By his wiſe power made many creatures breed
Of liveleſſe bodies without Venus *deed.*

6. Day of Du Bartas.

So the cold humour breeds the Salamander,
Who (in effect) like to her births commander,
With child with hundred winters, with her touch
Quencheth the fire though glowing ne're ſo much.

So in the fire in burning furnace ſprings
The Fly Perauſta *with the flaming wings;*
Without the fire it dyes, in it it joyes,
Living in that which all things elſe deſtroyes.

So ſlow Boötes *underneath him ſees*
In th' Icy Iſlands goſlings *hatcht of trees,*
Whoſe fruitful leaves falling into the water,
Are turn'd ('tis known) to living fowls ſoon after.

View Gerh. Herbal and Cambden.

So rotten planks of broken ſhips do change
To Barnacles. *O transformation ſtrange!*
'Twas firſt a green tree, then a broken hull,
Lately a muſhrome, now a flying Gull.

Venat. O my good Maſter, this morning walk has been ſpent to my great pleaſure and wonder: but, I pray, when ſhall I have your direction how to make artificial flies, like to thoſe that the *Trout* loves beſt? and alſo how to uſe them?

Piſc. My honeſt Scholer, it is now paſt five of the Clock, we will fiſh till nine, and then go to breakfaſt: Go you to yonder *Sycamore tree*, and hide your Bottle of drink under the hollow root of it; for about that time, and in that place, we will make a brave breakfaſt with a piece of powdered Bief, and a Radiſh or two that I have in my Fiſh-bag; we ſhall, I warrant you, make a good, honeſt, wholſome, hungry breakfaſt, and I will give you direction for the making and uſing of your flie: and in the mean time there is your Rod and Line, and my advice is, that you fiſh as you ſee me do, and

and let's try which can catch the firſt Fiſh.

Venat. I thank you Maſter, I will obſerve and practice your direction as far as I am able.

Piſc. Look you Scholer, you ſee I have hold of a good Fiſh: I now ſee it is a Trout, I pray, put that Net under him, and touch not my line, for if you do, then we break all. We ll done Scholer; I thank you.

Now for another. Truſt me I have another bite: come Scholer, come lay down your Rod, and help me to land this as you did the other. So, now we ſhall be ſure to have a good diſh of Fiſh for ſupper.

Venat. I am glad of that, but I have nó fortune: ſure, Maſter, yours is a better Rod, and better tackling.

Piſc. Nay, then take mine, and I will fiſh with yours. Look you, Scholer, I have another; come, do as you did before. And now I have a bite at another: Oh me! he has broke all; there's half a line and a good hook loſt.

Venat. Maſter, I can neither catch with the firſt nor ſecond Angle: I have no fortune.

Piſc. Look you, Scoler, I have yet another: and now having caught three brace of Trouts, I will tell you a ſhort Tale as we walk towards our breakfaſt: *A Scholer (a Preacher I ſhould ſay) that was to preach to procure the approbation of a Pariſh, that he might be their Lecturer, had got from his Fellow-pupil the copy of a ſermon that was*

first preached with a great commendation by him that composed and preach'd it; and though the borrower of it preach'd it word for word, as it was at first, yet it was utterly disliked as it was preached by the second: which the sermon-borrower complained of to the lender of it, and was thus answered; I lent you indeed my Fiddle, *but not my* Fiddlestick; *for you are to know, that every one cannot make musick with my words, which are fitted for my own mouth.* And so, my Scholer, you are to know, that as the ill pronunciation or ill accenting of words in a Sermon spoils it, so the ill carriage of your line, or not fishing even to a foot in a right place, makes you lose your labour: and you are to know, that though you have my *Fiddle*, that is, my very Rod and tacklings with which you see I catch Fish; yet you have not my *Fiddlestick*, that is, you yet have not skill to know how to carry your hand and line, nor how to guide it to a right place: and this must be taught you (for you are to remember I told you, Angling is an Art) either by practice, or a long observation, or both. But take this for a rule, when you fish for a Trout with a Worme, let your line have so much, and not more Lead than will fit the stream in which you fish; that is to say, more in a great troublesome stream than in a smaller that is quieter; as near as may be, so much as will sink the bait to the bottom, and keep it still in motion, and not more.

But

But now lets say Grace and fall to breakfast: what say you, Scholer, to the providence of an old angler? does not this meat taste well? and was not this place well chosen to eat it? for this Sycamore tree will shade us from the Suns heat.

Ven. All excellent good, and my stomach excellent good too. And I now remember and find that true which devout *Lessius* saies; *That poor men, and those that fast often, have much more pleasure in eating then rich men and gluttons, that always feed before their stomachs are empty of their last meat, and so rob themselves of that pleasure that hunger brings to poor men.* And I do seriously approve of that saying of yours, *That you had rather be a civil well-grounded, temperate poor Angler, then a drunken Lord.* But I hope there is none such, however I am certain of this, that I have been at many very costly dinners that have not afforded me half the content that this has done, for which I thank God and you.

And now good Master, proceed to your promised direction for making and ordering my Artificial flie.

Pisc. My honest Scholer, I will do it, for it is a debt due unto you by my promise: and because you shall not think your self more engaged to me then indeed you really are, I will freely give you such directions as were lately given to me by an ingenuous brother of the Angle,

Angle, an honeſt man, and a moſt excellent *Flie-fiſher.*

You are to note, that there are twelve kinds of Artificial made Flies to Angle with upon the top of the water, (note by the way, that the fitteſt ſeaſon of uſing theſe is in a bluſtering windie day, when the waters are ſo troubled that the natural flie cannot be ſeen, or reſt upon them.) The firſt is the *dun-fly* in *March*, the body is made of *dun wool*, the wings of the Partridges feathers. The ſecond, is another *dun-fly*, the body of *black wool*, and the wings made of the black Drakes feathers, and of the feathers under his taile. The third is the *ſtone-fly* in *April*, the body is made of *black wool* made yellow under the wings, and under the taile, and ſo made with wings of the Drake. The fourth is the *ruddy-fly* in the beginning of *May*, the body made of red wool wrapt about with black ſilk, and the feathers are the wings of the Drake, with the feathers of a red Capon alſo, which hang dangling on his ſides next to the tail. The fifth is the *yellow* or *greeniſh-fly* (in *May* likewiſe) the body made of *yellow wooll*, and the wings made of the red cocks hackel or tail. The ſixth is, the *black-fly* in *May* alſo, the body made of *black-wool* and lapt about with the herle of a Peacocks tail; the wings are made of the wings of a brown Capon with his blue feathers in his head. The ſeventh is the

ſad

ſad *yellow-fly* in *June*, the body is made of *black-wooll*, with a yellow liſt on either ſide, and the wings taken off the wings of a Buzzard, bound with black braked hemp. The eight is the *mooriſh-fly* made with the body of duskiſh wooll, and the wings made of the blackiſh mail of the Drake. The ninth is the *tawny-fly*, good untill the middle of *June*; the body made of *tawny-wool*, the wings made contrary one againſt the other, made of the whitiſh mail of the wild Drake. The tenth is the *Waſp-fly* in *July*, the body made of *black-wool*, lapt about with yellow ſilk, the wings made of the feathers of the Drake, or of the Buzzard. The eleventh is, the *ſhell-fly*, good in mid *July*, the body made of greeniſh wool, lapt about with the herle of a Peacocks tail; and the wings made of the wings of the Buzzard. The twelfth is the dark *Drake-fly*, good in *Auguſt*, the body made with *black-wool*, lapt about vvith black ſilk; his vvings are made vvith the maile of the black Drake, vvith a black head. Thus have you a Jury of flies likely to betray and condemn all the Trouts in the River.

I ſhall next give you ſome other Directions for Flie-fiſhing, ſuch as are given by Mr. *Thomas Barker*, a Gentleman that hath ſpent much time in Fiſhing: but I ſhall do it vvith a little variation.

Firſt, let your Rod be light, and very gentle,

I take the beſt to be of two pieces, and let not your Line exceed (eſpecially for three or four links next to the hook) I ſay, not exceed three or four hairs at the moſt, though you may Fiſh a little ſtronger above in the upper part of your Line: but if you can attain to Angle with one hair, you ſhall have more riſes, and catch more Fiſh. Now you muſt be ſure not to cumber your ſelf with too long a Line, as moſt do: and before you begin to angle, caſt to have the wind on your back, and the Sun (if it ſhines) to be before you, and to Fiſh down the ſtream; and carrie the point or top of your Rod downward, by which means the ſhadow of your ſelf, and Rod too will be the leaſt offenſive to the Fiſh, for the ſight of any ſhade amazes the Fiſh, and ſpoils your ſport, of which you muſt take a great care.

In the middle of *March* (till which time a man ſhould not in honeſtie catch a Trout) or in *April*, if the weather be dark, or a little windie or cloudie, the beſt Fiſhing is with the *Palmer-worm*, of which I laſt ſpoke to you, but of theſe there be divers kinds, or at leaſt of divers colours; theſe and the *May-fly* are the ground of all Flie-Angling, which are to be thus made.

Firſt, you muſt arme your hook with the line in the inſide of it, then take your Sciſſers, and cut ſo much of a brown Malards feather as in your

your own reaſon will make the wings of it, you having withall regard to the bigneſs or littleneſs of your hook, then lay the outmoſt part of your feather next to your hook, then the point of your feather next the ſhank of your hook; and having ſo done, whip it three or four times about the hook with the ſame Silk, with which your hook was armed, and having made the Silk faſt, take the hackel of a *Cock* or *Capons* neck, or a *Plovers* top, which is uſually better: take off the one ſide of the feather, and then take the hackel, Silk or Crewel, Gold or Silver thred, make theſe faſt at the bent of the hook, that is to ſay, below your arming; then you muſt take the hackel, the Silver or Gold thred, and work it up to the wings, ſhifting or ſtill removing your fingers as you turn the Silk about the hook: and ſtill looking at everie ſtop or turn, that your Gold, or what materials ſoever you make your *Fly* of, do lie right and neatly; and if you find they do ſo, then when you have made the head, make all faſt, and then work your hackel up to the head, and make that faſt: and then with a needle or pin divide the wing into two, and then with the arming Silk whip it about croſs-waies betwixt the wings, and then with your thumb you muſt turn the point of the feather towards the bent of the hook, and then work three or four times about the ſhank of the hook, and then view the.

pro-

proportion, and if all be neat and to your liking, fasten.

I confess, no direction can be given to make a man of a dull capacitie able to make a Flie well: and yet I know, this with a little practice will help an ingenuous Angler in a good degree: but to see a Flie made by an Artist in that kind, is the best teaching to make it, and then an ingenuous Angler may walk by the River and mark what Flie falls on the water that day, and catch one of them, if he see the *Trout* leap at a flie of that kind, and then having alwaies hooks readie hung with him, and having a bag also, alwaies with him with Bears hair, or the hair of a brown or sad-coloured Heifer, hackels of a Cock or Capon, severall coloured Silk and Crewel to make the bodie of the flie, the feathers of a Drakes head, black or brown Sheeps wool, or Hogs wool, or hair, thred of Gold and of Silver: Silk of severall colours (especially sad coloured to make the flies head:) and there be also other coloured feathers both of little birds and of peckled foul. I say, having those with him in a bag, and trying to make a flie, though he miss at first, yet shall he at last hit it better, even to such a perfection which none can well teach him; and if he hit to make his Flie right, and have the luck to hit also where there is store of *Trouts*, a dark day, and a right wind, he will catch such store

ſtore of them, as will encourage him to grow more and more in love with the Art of *Fly-making.*

Venat. But my loving Maſter, if any wind will not ſerve, then I wiſh I were in *Lapland*, to buy a good wind of one of the honeſt Witches, that ſell ſo manie winds, and ſo cheap.

Piſc. Marrie Scholer, but I would not be there, nor indeed from under this tree: for look how it begins to rain, and by the clouds if I miſtake not we ſhall preſently have a ſmoaking ſhowre, and therefore ſit cloſe, this *Sycamore-tree* will ſhelter us: and I wil tell you, as they ſhall come into my mind, more obſervation of flie-fiſhing for a *trout.*

But firſt for the wind, you are to take notice, that of the winds the *Southwind* is ſaid to be beſt: One obſerves, That

——*When the wind is ſouth,*
It blowes your bait into a fiſhes mouth.

Next to that, the *Weſt* vvind is believed to be the beſt: and having told you that the *Eaſt* vvind is the vvorſt, I need not tell you vvhich vvind is the beſt in the third degree: And yet (as *Solomon* obſerves) that *He that conſiders the wind ſhall never ſow:* ſo he that buſies his head too much about them, (if the vveather be not made extreme cold by an Eaſt wind) ſhall be a little

little superstitious: For as it is observed by some, That there is no good Horse of a bad colour; so I have observed that if it be a cloudy day, and not extreme cold, let the Wind sit in what corner it will, and do its worst. And yet take this for a rule, that I would willingly fish standing on the Lee-shore: and you are to take notice, that the Fish lies or swimmes nearer the bottom, and in deeper water in Winter than in Summer; and also nearer the bottom in any cold day, and then gets neareſt the low side of the water.

But I promised to tell you more of the Flie-fishing for a *Trout*, which I may have time enough to do, for you see it rains *May butter*: First for a *May*-flie, you may make his body with greenish coloured Crewel, or Willowish colour; darkning it in most places with waxed Silk, or rib'd with a black hair, or some of them rib'd with silver thred; and such Wings for the colour as you see the flie to have at that season; nay, at that very day on the water. Or you may make the *Oak*-flie with an Orange-tawny and black ground, and the brown of a Mallards feather for the Wings; and you are to know, that these two are most excellent flies, that is, the *May-flie* and the *Oak-flie*. And let me again tell you, that you keep as far from the water as you can possibly, whether you fish with a flie or worm, and fish down the stream;

and

and when you fish with a flie, if it be possible, let no part of your line touch the water, but your flie only; and be still moving your flie upon the water, or casting it into the water, you your self being also alwayes moving down the streame. Mr. *Barker* commends several sorts of the *Palmer* flies, not onely those rib'd with silver and gold, but others that have their bodies all made of black, or some with red, and a red hackel; you may also make the *Hawthorn-flye*, which is all black, and not big, but very small, the smaller the better; or the *Oak-flye*, the body of which is Orange-color and black Crewel, with a brown Wing; or a *Flye* made with a *Peacocks* feather, is excellent in a bright day: You must be sure you want not in your Magazine-bag the *Peacocks* feather, and grounds of such wool and Crewel as will make the Grashopper: and note that usually the smallest flies are best: and note also, that the light flie does usually make most sport in a dark day; and the darkest and least flie in a bright or clear day: and lastly note, that you are to repair upon any occasion to your Magazine-bag, and upon any occasion vary and make them lighter or sadder according to your fancy or the day.

And now I shall tell you, that the fishing with a natural flie is excellent, and affords much pleasure; they may be found thus, the *May-flye* usually in and about that moneth near to the River side, especially against rain;

the *Oak-fly* on the butt or body of an *Oak* or *Ash* from the beginning of *May* to the end of *August*; it is a brownish flie, and easie to be so found, and stands usually with his head downward, that is to say, towards the root of the tree; the small black flie, or Hawthorn flie, is to be had on any Hawthorn bush after the leaves be come forth; with these and a short Line (as I shewed to angle for a *Chub*) you may dape or dop, and also with a *Grashopper* behind a tree, or in any deep hole, still making it to move on the top of the water, as if it were alive, and still keeping your self out of sight, you shall certainly have sport if there be *Trouts*; yea, in a hot day, but especially in the evening of a hot day.

And now, Scholer, my direction for Flie-fishing is ended with this showre, for it has done raining, and now look about you, and see how pleasantly that Medow looks; nay, and the Earth smells as sweetly too. Come, let me tell you what holie Mr. *Herbert* sayes of such dayes and flowers as these, and then we will thank God that we enjoy them, and walk to the River and sit down quietly, and trie to catch the other brace of *Trouts*.

Sweet day, so cool, so calme, so bright,
The bridal of the earth and skie,
Sweet dews shall weep thy fall to night,
for thou must dye.

Swee

Sweet Roſe, whoſe hew angry and brave
Bids the raſh gazer wipe his eye,
Thy root is ever in its grave,
and thou muſt dye.

Sweet Spring, full of ſweet dayes and roſes,
A box where ſweets compacted lye;
My Muſick ſhowes you have your cloſes,
and all muſt dye.

Onely a ſweet and vertuous ſoul,
Like ſeaſoned Timber never gives,
But when the whole world turns to cole,
then chiefly lives.

Venat. I thank you, good Maſter, for your good direction for Flie-fiſhing, and for the ſweet enjoiment of the pleaſant day, which is ſo far ſpent without offence to God or man: and I thank you for the ſweet cloſe of your diſcourſe with Mr. *Herberts* Verſes, which I have heard loved Angling; and I do the rather believe it, becauſe he had a ſpirit ſutable to Anglers, and to thoſe primitive Chriſtians that you love, and have ſo much commended.

Piſc. Well, my loving Scholer, and I am pleaſed, to know that you are ſo well pleaſed with my direction and diſcourſe;

And ſince you like theſe Verſes of Mr. *Herberts*

berts so well, let me tell you what a reverend and learned Divine that professes to imitate him, (and has indeed done so most excellently) hath writ of our *Book* of *Common-prayer*, which I know you will like the better, because he is a friend of mine, and I am sure no enemie to Angling.

What? prayer by the book? and common? Yes, why (not?
The Spirit of grace,
And supplication,
Is not left free alone
For time and place,
But manner too: to read or speak by rote,
Is all alike to him, that prayes
In's heart, what with his mouth he sayes.

They that in private by themselves alone
Do pray, may take
What liberty they please,
In chusing of the wayes
Wherein to make
Their souls most intimate affections knowne
To him that sees in secret, when
Th' are most conceal'd from other men.

But he, that unto others leads the way
In publick prayer,
Should do it so
As all that hear may know
The

They need not fear
To tune their hearts unto his tongue, and ſay,
Amen; *nor doubt they were betray'd*
To blaſpheme, *when they ſhould have* pray'd.

Devotion will adde life unto the Letter,
And why ſhould not
That which Authority
Preſcribes, eſteemed be
Advantage got?
If th' prayer be good, the commoner the better,
Prayer in the Churches words, *as well*
As ſenſe, *of all prayers bears the bell.*

Ch. Harvie.

And now, Scholer, I think it will be time to repair to our Angle-rods, which we left in the water to fiſh for themſelves, and you ſhall chuſe which ſhall be yours; and it is an even lay, one of them catches.

And let me tell you, this kind of Fiſhing with a dead rod and laying night-hooks, are like putting money to Uſe, for they both work for the Owners, when they do nothing but ſleep, or eat, or rejoice, as you know we have done this laſt hour, and ſate as quietly and as free from cares under his *Scycamore*, as *Virgills Tityrus* and his *Meliboeus* did under their broad *Beech-tree*: No life, my honeſt Scholer, no life ſo happie and ſo pleaſant, as the life of a

well-governed *Angler*; for when the *Lawyer* is swallowed up with busines, and the *Statesman* is preventing or contriving plots, then we sit on *Cowslip-banks*, hear the Birds sing, and possesse our selves in as much quietnes as these silent silver streams, which we now see glide so quietly by us. Indeed my good Scholer, we may say of *Angling* as Dr. *Boteler* said of *Strawberries*; *Doubtless God could have made a better berry, but doubtless God never did*: And so (if I might be Judge) *God never did make a more calm, quiet, innocent recreation then Angling.*

Ile tell you Scholer, when I sate last on this *Prime-rose-bank* and look'd down these Meadows; I thought of them as *Charles* the Emperour did of the City of *Florence*: *That they were too pleasant to be look'd on, but onely on Holy-Days.* As I then sate on this very grass, I turn'd my present thoughts into Verse: 'Twas a wish which Ile repeate to you.

The Anglers wish.

I in these flowery Meades wo'd be,
These Christall streams should solace me;
To whose harmonious bubling noise,
I with my Angle wo'd rejoice.
Sit here and see the Turtle-dove,
Court his chaste Mate to acts of love;

Or on that bank feel the West wind
Breath health and plenty, please my mind
To see sweet dew-drops kiß these flowres,
And then washt off by April showres:
Here heare my Clora *sing* * *a song,*
There see a Black-bird feed her young,
Or a Leverock *build her nest;*
Here give my weary spirits rest,
And raise my low-pitcht thoughts above
Earth, or what poore mortalls love:
Thus free from Law-suits *and the noise,*
Of Princes Courts I wo'd rejoice.

* Like Hermine poor.

Or with my Bryan *and a book,*
Loyter long days near Shavvford brook;
There sit by him and eat my meat,
There see the Sun both rise and set:
There bid good morning to next day,
There meditate my time away:
And Angle on, and beg to have
A quiet passage, to a welcome grave.

When I had ended this compoſure, I left this place and ſaw a Brother of the Angle ſit under that *honey-ſuckle-hedg*, (one that wil prove worth your acquaintantance.) I ſate down by him, and preſently we met with an accidental piece of Merriment which I will relate to you; for it rains ſtill.

On the other ſide of this very hedg ſate a

gang of *Gypsies*, and neere to them sate a gang of *Beggars*: The *Gypsies* were then to divide all the money that had been got that week, either by stealing linnen or poultrie, or by Fortune-telling, or Legerdemaine, or indeed by any other sleights and secrets belonging to their mysterious Government. And the summe that was got that week proved to be but twenty and some odd shillings. The odd money was agreed to be distributed amongst the poor of their own Corporation; and for the remaining twentie shillings, that was to be divided unto four Gentlemen *Gypsies*, according to their severall degrees in their Commonwealth.

And the first or chiefest Gypsie, was to have a third part of the twenty shillings, which all men know is 6 s. 8 d.

The second was to have a fourth part of the 20 s. which all men know to be 5 s.

The third was to have a fifth part of the 20 s. which all men know to be 4 s.

The fourth and last Gipsie was to have a sixth part of the 20 s. which all men know to be 3 s 4 d.

As for example,

3 times 6 s. 8 d. is —— 20 s.
And so is 4 times 5 s. —— 20 s.
And so is 5 times 4 s. —— 20 s.
And so is 6 times 3 s. 4 d. —— 20 s.

And

And yet he that divided the mony was so very a Gipsie, that though he gave to every one these said sums, yet he kept one shilling of it for himself.

As for Example,	s.	d.
	6	8
	5	0
	4	0
	3	4
makes but	19	0

But now you shal know, that when the four Gipsies saw he had got one shilling by dividing the money, though not one of them knew why to demand more, yet like Lords and Courtiers every gipsie envied him that was the gainer, and wrangled with him, and every one said the *remaining shilling belonged to him*. And so they fell to so high a contest about it, as none that knowes the faithfulnesse of one *Gypsie* to another, will easily believe; only we that have lived this last twentie years, are certain that money nas been able to do much mischief. However the Gipsies were too wise to go to Law, and did therefore chuse their choice friends *Rook* and *Shark*, and our late English *Gusman* to be their Arbitrators and Umpire; and so they left this *Honey-succle-hedg*, and went to *Tell fortunes*, and *cheat*, and get more money

money and lodging in the next Village.

When these were gone we heard as high a contention amongst the *beggers*, *Whether it was easiest to rip a Cloak, or to unrip a cloak?* One *beggar* affirmed it was all one; but that was denyed by asking her, *if doing and undoing were all one?* then another said, *'Twas easiest to unrip a cloak*, for that was to let it alone. But she was answered, by asking her, how she unript it, if she let it alone? And she confest her self mistaken. These and twenty such like questions were propos'd and answered with as much beggarly Logick and earnestnesse as was ever heard to proceed from the mouth of the most pertinacious Schismatick; and sometimes all the Beggers (whose number was neither more nor lesse then the Poets nine Muses) talk'd all together about this ripping and unripping, and none heard what the other said; but at last one beggar crav'd audience, and told them, that old father *Claus*, whom *Ben Johnson* in his Beggers bush created King of their Corporation, was that night to lodge at an Ale-house (called *Catch-her-by-the-way*,) not far from *Waltham-Crosse*, and in the high-rode towards *London*, and he desired them to spend no more time about that and such like questions, but refer all to Father *Claus* at night, and in the meane time draw cuts what song should be next sung, and who should sing it; They all agreed to the motion,

motion, and the lot fell to her that was the youngeſt and verieſt Virgin of the company; and ſhe ſing *Franck Daviſons* Song, which he made forty years ago, and all the other of the company joined to ſing the burthen with her: the Ditty was this, but firſt the burthen.

Bright ſhines the Sun, play beggars play,
Here's ſcraps enough to ſerve to day:

What noyſe of viols is ſo ſweet
As when our merry clappers ring?
What mirth duth want when beggars meet?
A beggers life is for a King:
Eat, drink and play, ſleep when we liſt,
Go where we will ſo ſtocks be miſt.
Bright ſhines the Sun, play beggars play,
here's ſcraps enough to ſerve to day.

The world is ours and ours alone,
For we alone have world at will;
We purchaſe not, all is our own,
Both fields and ſtreets we beggars fill:
Play beggars play, play beggars play,
here's ſcraps enough to ſerve to day.

A hundred herds of black and white
Upon our Gowns ſecurely feed
And yet if any dare us bite,
He dies therefore as ſure as Creed:

And

Thus beggers Lord it as they please,
And only beggers live at ease:
Bright shines the sun, play beggers play,
Here's scraps enough to serve to day.

Venat. I thank you good Master, for this piece of merriment, and this Song, which was well humoured by the Maker, and well remembred by you.

Pisc. But I pray forget not the Ketch which you promised to make against night, for our Country man, honest *Coridon* will expect your Ketch and my Song, which I must be forced to patch up, for it is so long since I learnt it, that I have forgot a part of it. But come, now it hath done raining, lets stretch our legs a little in a gentle walk to the River, and try what interest our Angles will pay us for lending them so long to be used by the *Trouts*, lent them indeed like Usurers for our profit and their destruction.

Venat. Oh me, look you Master, a fish a fish, oh las Master I have lost her.

Pisc. I marrie Sir, that was a good fish indeed: if I had had the luck to have taken up that Rod, then 'tis twentie to one, he should not have broke my line by running to the Rods end as you suffered him: I would have held him within the bent of my Rod, (unlesse he had been fellow to the great *Trout* that is near an ell long,

long, which was of ſuch a length and depth, that he had his picture drawn, and now to be ſeen at mine Hoſte *Rickabies* at the *George* in *Ware*,) and it may be, by giving that very great *trout* the Rod, that is, by caſting it to him into the water, I might have caught him at the long run, for ſo I uſe alwaies to do when I meet with an overgrown fiſh, and you will learn to do ſo too hereafter: for I tell you, Scholer, fiſhing is an Art, or at leaſt, it is an Art to catch Fiſh.

Venat. But Maſter, I have heard, that the great *trout* you ſpeak of is a *Salmon*.

Piſc. Truſt me Scholer, I know not what to ſay to it. There are many Countrey people that believe *Hares* change Sexes every year: And there be very many Learned men think ſo too, for in their diſſecting them they find many reaſons to incline them to that belief. And whether this were a *Salmon* when he came into the freſh water, and his not returning into the ſea hath altered him to another colour or kind, I am not able to ſay; but I am certain he hath all the ſigns of being a Trout, both for his *ſhape, colour, and ſpots*, and yet many think he is not.

Venat. But Maſter, will this *trout* which I had hold of die? for it is like he hath the hook in his belly.

Piſc. I will tell you, Scholer, that unleſs the hook be faſt in his very Gorge, he will live, and a little time with the help of the water, will ruſt

ruſt the hook, and it will in time wear away; as the gravel doth in the horſe hoof, which only leaves a falſe quarter.

And now Scholer, lets go to my Rod. Look you Scholer, I have a fiſh too, but it proves a logger-headed *Chub*, and this is not much amiſs, for this will pleaſure ſome poor body, as we go to our lodging to meet our brother *Peter* and honeſt *Coridon*. Come, now bait your hook again, and lay it into the water, for it rains again; and we will ev'n retire to the *Sycamore-tree*, and there I will give you more directions concerning Fiſhing: for I would fain make you an Artiſt.

Venat. Yes, good Maſter, I pray let it be ſo.

Piſc. Well Scholer, now we are ſate down and are at eaſe, I ſhall tell you a little more of *trout* Fiſhing, becauſe I ſpeak of the *Salmon* (which I purpoſe ſhall be next,) and then of the *Pike* or *Luce*. You are to know, there is night as well as day-fiſhing for a *trout*, and that in the night the beſt *trouts* come out of their holds; and the manner of taking them, is on the top of the water with a great *Lob* or *Garden worm*, or rather two, which you are to Fiſh with in a place where the waters run ſomewhat quietly (for in a ſtream the bait will not be ſo well diſcerned.) I ſay, in a *quiet* or dead place near to ſome ſwift, there draw your bait over the

the top of the water to and fro, and if there be a good *trout* in the hole, he will take it, especially if the night be dark: for then he is bold and lies near the top of the water, watching the motion of any *Frog*, or *Water-rat* or *Monse* that swims betwixt him and the skie, these he hunts after, if he sees the water but wrinkle, or move in one of these dead holes, where these great old Trouts usually lie near to their holds; for you are to note, that the great old Trout is both subtil and fearful, and lies close all day, and does not usually stir out of his hold, but lies in it as close in the day as the *timerous hare* does in her *form*: for the chief feeding of both is seldom in the day, but usually in the night, and then the great Trout feeds very boldly.

And you must Fish for him with a strong Line, and not a little hook, and let him have time to gorge your hook, for he does not usually forsake it, as he oft will in the day-fishing: and if the night be not dark, then Fish with an *Artificial fly* of a light-colour: nay, he will sometimes rise at a dead Mouse, or a piece of cloth, or any thing that seems to swim cross the water; or to be in motion: this is a choice way, but I have not oft used it, because it is void of the pleasures that such daies as these, that we two now enjoy, afford an Angler.

And you are to know, that in *Hampshire*, which

vvhich I think exceeds all *England* for ſvviſt, ſhallow, clear, pleaſant Brooks, and ſtore of *trouts*, they uſe to catch Trouts in the night, by the light of a Torch or ſtraw, vvhich vvhen they have diſcovered, they ſtrike vvith a Trouſpeer or other vvaies. This kind of vvay they catch very many, but I vvould not believe it till I vvas an eye-vvitneſs of it, nor do I like it now I have ſeen it.

Venat. But Maſter, do not *trouts* ſee us in the night?

Piſc. Yes, and hear, and ſmell too, both then and in the day time, for *Geſner* obſerves, the *Otter* ſmells a Fiſh forty furlong off him in the vvater: and that it may be true, ſeems to be affirmed by Sir *Francis Bacon* (in the eight Century of his Naturall Hiſtory) vvho there proves, that vvaters may be the *Medium* of ſounds, by demonſtrating it thus, *That if you knock two ſtones together very deep under the water, thoſe that ſtand on a bank near to that place may hear the noiſe without any diminution of it by the water.* He alſo offers the like experiment concerning the letting an *Anchor* fall by a very long cable or rope on a rock, or the ſand vvithin the Sea: and this being ſo vvell obſerved and demonſtrated, as it is by that learned man, has made me to believe that *Eeles* unbed themſelves, and ſtir at the noiſe of the Thunder, and not onely, as ſome think, by the motion or the ſtirring of the earth

vvhich

which is occasioned by that Thunder.

And this reason of Sir *Francis Bacon* (*Exper.* 792.) has made me crave pardon of one that I laught at, for affirming that he knew *Carps* come to a certain place in a Pond to be fed at the ringing of a Bell, or the beating of a Drum: and it shall be a rule for me to make as little noise as I can when I am fishing, untill Sir *Francis Bacon* be confuted, which I shall give any man leave to do.

And, lest you may think him singular in this opinion, I will tell you, this seems to be believed by our learned Doctor *Hackwell*, who (in his *Apology of Gods Power and Providence*, f. 360) quotes *Pliny* to report that one of the Emperors had particular Fish-ponds, and in them several Fish, that appeared and came when they were called by their particular names: and St. *James* tells us (*chap.* 3. *and* 7.) that all things in the Sea have been tamed by Mankind. And *Pliny* tells us (*lib.* 9. 35.) that *Amonia* the Wife of *Drusus* had a *Lamprey*, at whose gils she hung Jewels or Ear-rings; and that others have been so tender-hearted, as to shed tears at the death of Fishes, which they have kept and loved. And these Observations, which will to most hearers seem wonderful, seem to have a further confirmation from *Martial*, (*lib.* 4. *epigr.* 30.) who writes thus:

Piſcator fuge ne nocens, &c.

Angler, *would'ſt thou be guiltleſſe ? then forbear,*
For theſe are ſacred fiſhes *that ſwimme here;*
Who know their Sovereign, and will lick his hand;
Then which none's greater in the worlds command:
Nay more, th'have names, and when they called are,
Do to their ſeveral owners Call repair.

All the further uſe that I ſhall make of this, ſhall be to adviſe anglers to be patient, and forbear ſwearing, leſt they be heard and catch no Fiſh.

And ſo I ſhall proceed next to tell you, it is certain, that certain fields near *Lemſter*, a Town in *Hereford-ſhire*, are obſerved that they make the ſheep that graze upon them more fat than the next, and alſo to bear finer Wool; that is to ſay, that that Year in which they feed in ſuch a particular paſture, they ſhall yield finer wool than they did that Year before they came to feed in it, and courſer again if they ſhall return to their former paſture; and again return to a finer wool being fed in the fine wool ground. Which I tell you, that you may the better believe that I am certain, if I catch a *Trout* in one Meadow, he ſhall be *white* and *faint*, and very like to be *lowſie*; and as certainly, if I catch a *Trout* in the next Meadow, he ſhall be *ſtrong*, and

red,

fed; and *lusty*, and much better meat: Trust me, Scholer, I have caught many a *Trout* in a particular Meadow, that the very shape and the enamell'd colour of him hath been such, as hath joyed me to look on him; and I have with much pleasure concluded with *Solomon*; *Every thing is beautiful in his season.*

I should by promise speak next of the *Salmon*, but I will by your favour say a little of the *Umber* or *Grayling*; which is so like a *Trout* for his shape and feeding, that I desire I may exercise your patience with a short discourse of him, and the next shall be of the *Salmon*.

CHAP. VI.

Observations of the Umber *or* Grayling, *and directions how to fish for them.*

Pisc. THE *Umber* and *Grayling* are thought by some to differ as the *Herring* and *Pilcher* do: But though they may do so in other Nations, I think those in *England* differ nothing but in their names. *Aldrovandus* sayes, they be of a Trout kind: and *Gesner* sayes, that in his Countrey (which is *Swisserland*) he is accounted the choicest Fish. And in *Italy*, he is in

the moneth of *May* so highly valued, that he
sold then at a much higher rate than any o
Fish. The *French* (which call the *Chub*, *Un V*
lan) call the *Umber* of the Lake *Lemon*, *Un U*
ble Chevaliere; and they value the Umber
Grayling so highly, that they say he feeds
gold, and that many have been caught out
their famous River of *Loyre*, out of whose be
lies grains of gold have been often taken. An
some think that he feeds on Water-Time, a
smells so at his first taking out of the wate
and they may think so with as good reason
we do, that our Smelts smell like Violets
their being first caught; which I think is
truth. *Aldrovandus* sayes, the *Salmon*, the *Gra*
ling and *Trout*, and all Fish that live in cle
and sharp streams, are made by their moth
Nature of such exact shape and pleasant colou
purposely to invite us to a joy and contente
nesse in feasting with her. Whether this
truth or not, is not my purpose to dispute; b
'tis certain, all that write of the *Umber* decl
him to be very medicinable. And *Gesner* say
that the fat of a *Grayling* being set with a lit
Honie a day or two in the Sun in a little gl
is very excellent against rednesse, or any thi
that breeds in the eyes. *Salvian* takes him to
called *Umber* from his swift swimming or g
ding out of sight, more like a shadow or a g
than a fish. Much more might be said both

ſmel and taſte, but I ſhall only tell you, that *Ambroſe* the glorious Biſhop of *Millan* (who liv'd when the Church kept Faſting days) calls him the *flowre fiſh*, or flowre of fiſhes; and that he was ſo far in love with him, that he would not let him paſs without the honour of a long Diſcourſe; but I muſt; and paſs on to tell you how to take this dainty fiſh.

Firſt, Note, That he growes not to the bigneſſe of a Trout; for the biggeſt of them do not uſually exceed eighteen inches, he lives in ſuch Rivers as the Trout does, and is uſually taken with the ſame baits as the Trout is, and after the ſame manner, for he will bite both at the *Minnow*, or *Worm*, or *Fly*, (though he bites not often at the Minnow) and is very gameſome at the *Fly*, and much ſimpler, and therefore bolder then a *Trout*, for he will riſe twenty times at a flye, if you miſs him, and yet riſe again. He has been taken with a flye made of the red feathers of a *Parraketa*, a ſtrange outlandiſh bird, and he will riſe at a flye not unlike a gnat or a ſmall moth, or indeed, at moſt flies that are not too big. He is a fiſh that lurks cloſe all winter, but is very pleaſant and jolly after mid-*April* and in *May*, and in the other months: he is of a fine ſhape, his fleſh is white, his teeth, thoſe little ones that he has are in his throat, yet he has ſo tender a mouth, that he is oftner loſt after an Angler has

nooked him then any other fish. Though there be many of these Fishes in *Trent*, and some other smaller Rivers, as that which runs by *Salisbury*, yet he is not so general a fish as the *Trout*, nor to me so good to eat or to Angle for. And so I shall take my leave of him, and come to some observations of the *Salmon*, and how to catch him.

CHAP. VII.

Observations of the Salmon, *with direction how to fish for him.*

Pisc. THE *Salmon* is accounted the King of fresh-water-Fish, and is ever bred in Rivers relating to the sea, yet so high or far from it as admits of no tincture of salt or brackishness; He is said to breed or cast his spawn in most Rivers in the month of *August*: some say, that then they dig a hole or grave in a safe place in the gravel, and there place their egs or spawn (after the Melter has done his naturall Office) and then hid it most cunningly, and cover it over with gravel and stones; and so leave it to their Creators protection, who by a gentle heat which he infuses into that cold element makes it brood and beget life in the spawn and

and to become *Samlets* early in the ſpring next following.

The *Salmons* having ſpent their appointed time, and done this Natural Duty in the freſh waters, they haſte to the Sea before Winter, both the Melter and Spawner: but if they be ſtopt by *Floud-gates* or *Weres*, or loſt in the freſh waters, then thoſe ſo left behind, by degrees grow *ſick*, and *lean*, and *unſeaſonable*, and *kipper*, that is to ſay, have bony griſtles grow out of their lower chaps (not unlike a Hawks beak) which hinders their feeding, and in time ſuch Fiſh ſo left behind, pine away and dye. 'Tis obſerved, that he may live thus one year from the Sea; but he then grows inſipid, and taſteleſs, and loſes both his blood and ſtrength, and pines and dies the ſecond year. And 'tis noted, that thoſe little *Salmons* called Skeggers, which abound in many Rivers relating to the *ſea*, are bred by ſuch ſick *Salmon*, that might not go to the ſea, and that though they abound, yet they never thrive to any conſiderable bigneſs.

But if the old *ſalmon* gets to the *ſea*, then that griſtle weares away, or is caſt off (as the *Eagle* is ſaid to caſt his bill) and he recovers his ſtrength, and comes next Summer to the ſame River (if it be poſſible) to enjoy the former pleaſures that there poſſeſt him; for (as one has wittily obſerved) he has (like ſome perſons of honour and Riches, which have both their

winter and Summer houſes) the freſh Rivers for Summer, and the ſalt water for winter to ſpend his life in; which is not (as Sir *Francis Bacon* hath obſerved in his *Hiſtory of life and Death*) above ten years: And it is to be obſerved, that though they grow big in the Sea, yet they grow not fat but in freſh Rivers; and it is obſerved, that the farther they get from the *Sea*, they be both the fatter and better.

Next, I ſhall tell you, that though they make very hard ſhift to get out of the freſh Rivers into the Sea, yet that they wil make harder ſhift to get out of the ſalt into the freſh Rivers, to ſpawn or poſſeſſe the pleaſures that they have formerly found in them, to which end they will force themſelves through *Floud-gates*, or over *Weires*, or *hedges*, or *ſtops* in the water, even beyond common belief. *Geſner* ſpeaks of ſuch places, as are known to be above eight foot high above water. And our *Cambden* mentions (in his *Britannia*) the like wonder to be in *Pembroke-ſhire*, where the River *Tivy* falls into the ſea, and that the fall is ſo down-right, and ſo high, that the people ſtand and wonder at the ſtrength and ſlight that they ſee the *Salmon* uſe to get out of the Sea into the ſaid River; and the manner and height of the place is ſo notable, that it is known far by the name of the *Salmon-leap*, concerning which, take this alſo out of *Michael Draiton*, my honeſt old friend.

And

And when the Salmon ſeeks a freſher ſtream to find,
(Which hither from the Sea comes yearly by his kind)
As he towards ſeaſon grows, & ſtems the watry tract
Where Tivy *falling down, makes an high cataract,*
Forc'd by the riſing rocks that there her courſe oppoſe,
As though within her bounds they meant her to incloſe:
Here when the labouring fiſh does at the foot arrive,
And finds that by his ſtrength he does but vainly ſtrive,
His tail takes in his mouth, and bending like a bow
That's to ful compaſs drawn, aloft himſelf doth throw,
Then ſpringing at his height as doth a little wand
That bended end to end, and ſtarted from mans hand,
Far off it ſelf doth caſt; ſo does the Salmon *vaut,*
And if at firſt he fail, his ſecond Summer ſought,
He inſtantly eſſaies, and from his nimble ring,
Still yerking, never leaves untill himſelf he fling
Above the oppoſing ſtream.—

And next I ſhall tell you, that it is obſerved by *Geſner* and others, that there is no better *Salmon* then in *England*: and that though ſome of our Northern Countries have as fat and as large as the River *Thames*, yet none are of ſo excellent a taſte.

And as I have told you that Sir *Francis Bacon* obſerves, the age of a *Salmon* exceeds not ten years, ſo let me next tell you, that his growth is very ſudden: it is ſaid, that after he is got into the ſea, he becomes from a *Samlet*, not ſo big as a Gudgion, to be a *Salmon*, in as ſhort a time

time as a Gosling becomes to be a Goose. Much of this has been observed by tying a *Ribband* or some known *tape* or *thred*, in the tail of some young *Salmons*, which have been taken in Weirs as they have swimm'd toward the salt water, and then by taking a part of them again with the known mark at the same place at their return from the Sea, which is usually about six moneths after; and the like experiment hath been tryed upon young *Swallowes*, who have after six moneths absence, been observed to return to the same chimney, there to make their nests and habitations for the Summer following: which has inclined many to think, that every *Salmon* usually returns to the same River in which it was bred, as young *Pigeons* taken out of the same *Dove-cote*, have also been observed to do.

And you are yet to observe further, that the He *Salmon* is usually bigger then the Spawner, and that he is more kipper, and less able to endure a winter in the fresh water, then the She is; yet she is at that time of looking less kipper and better, as watry, and as bad meat.

And yet you are to observe, that as there is no generall rule without an exception, so there are some few Rivers in this Nation, that have *Trouts* and *Salmon* in season in winter, as 'tis certain there be in the River *Wy* in *Munmoth-shire*, where they be in season (as *Cambden* observes)

ſerves) from *September* till *April*. But my Scholer, the obſervation of this and many other things, I muſt in manners omit, becauſe they will prove too large for our narrow compaſs of time, and therefore I ſhall next fall upon my direction how to fiſh for this *Salmon*.

And for that firſt, you ſhall obſerve, that uſually he ſtaies not long in a place (as *Trouts* wil) but (as I ſaid) covets ſtill to go nearer the Spring-head; and that he does not (as the *Trout* and many other fiſh) lie near the water ſide or bank, or roots of trees, but ſwims in the deep and broad parts of the water, and uſually in the middle, and near the ground; and that there you are to Fiſh for him, and that he is to be caught as the *Trout* is, with a *Worm*, a *Minnow*, (which ſome call a *Penke*) or with a *Fly*.

And you are to obſerve, that he is very ſeldom obſerved to bite at a *Minnow*, (yet ſometime he will) and not oft at a *fly*, but more uſually at a *Worm*, and then moſt uſually at a *Lob* or *Garden-worm*, which ſhould be well ſcoured, that is to ſay, ſeven or eight daies in Moſs before you fiſh with them: and if you double your time of eight into ſixteen or more, into twenty or more daies, it is ſtill the better, for the worms will ſtill be clearer, tougher, and more lively, and continue ſo longer upon your hook, and they may be kept longer by keeping them cool and in freſh Moſs.

Note

Note also, that many use to fish for a *Salmon* with a ring of wyre on the top of their Rod, through which the Line may run to as great a length as it is needfull when he is hook'd. And to that end, some use a wheel about the middle of their Rod, or nearer their hand, which are to be observed either by seeing one of them, or a large demonstration of words.

And now I shall tell you, that which may be called a secret: I have been a fishing with old *Oliver Henly*, (now with God) a noted Fisher, both for *Trout* and *Salmon*, and have observed, that he would usually take three or four worms out of his bag, and put them into a little box in his pocket, where he would usually let them continue half an hour or more, before he would bait his hook with them; I have asked him his reason, and he has replyed, *He did but pick the best out to be in a readinesse against he baited his hook the next time*: But he has been observed both by others, and my self, to catch more fish then I or any other body, that has ever gone a fishing with him could do, and especially *Salmons*; and I have been told lately by one of his most intimate and secret friends, that the box in which he put those worms, was annointed with a drop, or two, or three of the Oil of *Ivy berries*, made by expression or infusion, and that by the worms remaining in that box an hour, or a like time, they had incorporated a kind of smell

that

that was irresistibly attractive, enough to force any fish within the smell of them, to bite. This I heard not long since from a friend, but have not tryed it; yet I grant it probable, and refer my Reader to Sir *Francis Bacons* Natural History, where he proves fishes may hear: and I am certain *Gesner* saies, the *Otter* can smell in the water, and I know not but that fish may do so too: 'tis left for a lover of Angling, or any that desires to improve that Art, to try this conclusion.

I shall also impart two other experiments (but not tryed by my self) which I will deliver in the same words that they were given me (by an excellent Angler, and a very friend) in writing, he told me the latter was too good to be told, but in a learned language, lest it should be made common.

Take the stinking oil, drawn out of Polypody *of the Oak by a retort, mixt with* Turpentine, *and* Hive-honey, *and annoint your bait therewith, and it will doubtless draw the fish to it.*

The other is this: *Vulnera hederæ grandissimæ inflectar sudant Balsamum oleo gelato, albicanti quam simile, odoris vero longe suavissimi.*

'Tis supremely sweet to any fish, and yet *Asa fœtida* may do the like.

But in these things I have no great faith, yet grant it probable, and have had from some chimical men (namely, from Sir *George Hastings* and

and others) an affirmation of them to be very advantageous: but no more of these, especially not in this place.

I might here, before I take my leave of the *Salmon*, tell you, that there is more then one sort of them, as namely, a *Teeon*, and another called in some places a *Samlet*, or by some, a *Skegger*: but these (and others which I forbear to name) may be Fish of another kind, (and differ, as we know a *Herring* and a *Pilcher* do,) which I think are as different, as the Rivers in which they breed, and must by me be left to the disquisitions of men of more leisure, and of greater abilities, then I profess my self to have.

And lastly, I am to borrow so much of your promised patience, as to tell you that the *Trout* or *Salmon* being in season, have at their first taking out of the water (which continues during life) their bodies adorned, the one with such red spots, and the other with such black or blackish spots, which gives them such an addition of natural beauty, as I think, was never given to any woman by the Artificial Paint or Patches in which they so much pride themselves in this age. And so I shall leave them, and proceed to some Observations of the *Pike*.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Observations of the Luce *or* Pike, *with directions how to fish for him.*

Pisc. THE mighty *Luce* or *Pike* is taken to be the Tyrant (as the *Salmon* is the King) of the fresh waters. 'Tis not to be doubted, but that they are bred, some by generation, and some not: as namely, of a Weed called *Pickerel-weed*, unless learned *Gesner* be much mistaken; for he sayes, this weed and other glutinous matter, with the help of the Suns heat in some particular Moneths, and some Ponds apted for it by nature, do become *pikes*. But doubtless divers *pikes* are bred after this manner, or are brought into some Ponds some other wayes that is past mans finding out, of which we have daily testimonies.

Sir *Francis Bacon* in his History of Life and Death, observes the *pike* to be the longest lived of any fresh-water-Fish, and yet he computes it to be not usually above forty years; and others think it to be not above ten years; and yet *Gesner* mentions a *pike* taken in *Swedeland* in the Year 1449. with a Ring about his neck, declaring he was put into the Pond by *Frederick* the second, more than two hundred years before

fore he was last taken, as by the Inscription of that Ring (being Greek) was interpreted by the then Bishop of *Worms*. But of this no more, but that it is observed, that the old or very great Pikes have in them more of state than goodness; the smaller or middle sized Pikes being by the most and choicest Palates observed to be the best meat; and contrary, the Eele is observed to be the better for age and bigness.

All *Pikes* that live long prove chargeable to their Keepers, because their life is maintained by the death of so many other Fish, even those of his own kind, which has made him by some Writers to be called the *Tyrant* of the Rivers, or the *Fresh-water-woolf*, by reason of his bold, greedy devouring disposition; which is so keen, as *Gesner* relates, a man going to a Pond (where it seems a *Pike* had devoured all the fish) to water his Mule, had a *Pike* bit his Mule by the lips, to which the *Pike* hung so fast, that the Mule drew him out of the water, and by that accident the owner of the Mule got the *pike*. And the same *Gesner* observes, that a Maid in *Poland* had a *pike* bit her by the foot as she was washing clothes in a Pond. And I have heard the like of a woman in *Killingworth* Pond, not far from *Coventry*. But I have been assured by my friend Mr. *Seagrave*, of whom I spake to you formerly, that keeps tame Otters, that he hath known a *pike* in extreme hunger fight with

with one of his Otters for a Carp that the Otter had caught, and was then bringing out of the water. I have told you who relates theſe things, and tell you they are perſons of credit, and ſhall conclude this obſervation, by telling you what a wiſe man has obſerved, *It is a hard thing to perſwade the belly, becauſe it has no ears.*

But if theſe relations be disbelieved, it is too evident to be doubted that a *pike* will devour a Fiſh of his own kind, that ſhall be bigger than his belly or throat will receive, and ſwallow a part of him, and let the other part remain in his mouth till the ſwallowed part be digeſted, and then ſwallow that other part that was in his mouth, and ſo put it over by degrees; which is not unlike the Oxe and ſome other beaſts, taking their meat not out of their mouth into their belly, but firſt into ſome place betwixt, and then chaw it, or digeſt it after, which is called *Chewing the cud.* And doubtleſs *pikes* will bite when they are not hungry, but as ſome think in very anger, when a tempting bait comes near to them.

And it is obſerved, that the *pike* will eat venemous things, (as ſome kind of *Frogs* are) and yet live without being harmed by them: for, as ſome ſay, he has in him a natural Balſom or Antidote againſt all poiſon; and others, that he never eats the venemous *Frog*, till he have firſt killed her, and then (as *Ducks* are obſer-

ved to do to *Frogs* in Spawning time, at which time ſome *Frogs* are obſerved to be venemous) ſo throughly waſht her, by tumbling her up and down in the water, that he may devour her without danger. And *Geſner* affirms, that a *Polonian* Gentleman did faithfully aſſure him, he had ſeen two young Geeſe at one time in the belly of a *pike*. And doubtleſſe a *pike* in his height of hunger will bite at and devour a dog that ſwimmes in a Pond, and there has been examples of it, or the like; for as I told you, *The belly has no ears when hunger comes upon it.*

The *pike* is alſo obſerved to be a ſolitary, melancholly and a bold Fiſh: Melancholly, becauſe he alwayes ſwimmes or reſts himſelf alone, and never ſwimmes in ſholes or with company, as *Roach* and *Dace*, and moſt other Fiſh do: And bold, becauſe he fears not a ſhadow, or to ſee or be ſeen of any body, as the *Trout* and *Chub*, and all other Fiſh do.

And it is obſerved by *Geſner*, that the Jawbones, and Hearts, and Galls of *pikes* are very medicinable for ſeveral diſeaſes, or to ſtop bloud, to abate Fevers, to cure Agues, to oppoſe or expel the infection of the Plague, and to be many wayes medicinable and uſeful for the good of Mankind; but he obſerves, that the biting of a *pike* is venemous and hard to be cured.

And it is obſerved, that the Pike is a fiſh that breeds

breeds but once a year, and that other fish (as namely *Loaches*) do breed oftner: as we are certain tame Pigeons do almost every moneth; and yet the Hawk, a bird of prey (as the Pike is of Fish) breeds but once in twelve moneths: and you are to note, that his time of breeding or Spawning is usually about the end of *February*, (or somewhat later, in *March*, as the weather proves colder or warmer) and to note, that his manner of breeding is thus, a He and a She Pike will usually go together out of a River into some ditch or creek, and that there the Spawner casts her eggs, and the Melter hovers over her all that time that she is casting her Spawn, but touches her not.

I might say more of this, but it might be thought curiosity or worse, and shall therefore forbear it, and take up so much of your attention as to tell you, that the best of Pikes are noted to be in *Rivers*, next those in great *Ponds* or *Meres*, and the worst in small Ponds.

But before I proceed further, I am to tell you, that there is a great antipathie betwixt the Pike and some Frogs; and this may appear to the Reader of *Dubravius*, (a Bishop in *Bohemia*,) Who in his Book of Fish and Fish-ponds, relates what he saies he saw with his own eyes, and could not forbear to tell the Reader. Which was:

As he and Bishop Thurzo *were walking by a*

large Pond in Bohemia, *they saw a Frog, when the Pike lay very sleepily and quiet by the shore side, leap upon his head, and the Frog having expresst malice or anger by his swolne cheeks and staring eyes, did stretch out his legs and imbraced the Pikes head, and presently reached them to his eyes, tearing with them and his teeth those tender parts; the Pike moved with anguish, moves up and down the water and rubs himself against weeds, and what ever he thought might quit him of his enemy; but all in vain, for the frog did continue to ride triumphantly, and to bite and torment the Pike till his strength failed, and then he sunk with the Pike to the bottom of the water; then presently the frog appeared again at the top and croaked, and seemed to rejoyce like a Conqueror, and then presently retyred to her secret hole. The Bishop, that had beheld the battel, called his fisherman to fetch his nets, and by all means to get the Pike, that they might declare what had hapned: and the Pike was drawn forth with both his eyes eaten out, at which when they began to wonder, the Fisherman wished them to forbear, and assured them he was certain that Pikes were often so served.*

I told this (which is to be read in the sixth Chapter of the Book of *Dubravius*) unto a friend, who replied, *It was as improbable as to have the mouse scratch out the cats eyes.* But he did not consider that there be fishing Frogs (which the *Dalmatians* call the Water-Devil) of which I might tell you as wonderful a story, but I shall tell

tell you, that 'tis not to be doubted, but that there be ſome Frogs ſo fearful of the Water-ſnake, that when they ſwim in a place they fear to meet with him, they get a reed acroſſe into their mouthes, which if they two meet by accident, ſecures the frog from the ſtrength and malice of the *Snake*, and note, that the frog ſwims the faſter.

And let me tell you, that as there be *Water* and *Land-frogs*, ſo there be *Land* and *Water-ſnakes*. Concerning which take this Obſervation, That the Land-ſnake breeds and hatches her eggs, which become young Snakes in ſome old dunghil, or a like hot place; but the Water-ſnake, which is not venemous (and as I have been aſſured by a great obſerver of ſuch ſecrets) does breed her young alive, which ſhe does not then forſake, but bides with them, and in caſe of danger will take them all into her mouth and ſwim away from any apprehended danger, and let them out again when ſhe thinks all danger to be paſt: Theſe be accidents that we Anglers ſometimes ſee and often talk of.

But whither am I going? I had almoſt loſt my ſelf by remembring the Diſcourſe of *Dubravius*. I will therefore ſtop here, and tell you according to my promiſe how to catch this fiſh.

His feeding is usually of *fish* or *frogs*, and sometimes a weed of his own called *Pickerel-weed*. Of which I told you some think some Pikes are bred; for they have observed that where none have been put into Ponds, yet they have there found many: and that there has been plenty of that weed in those Ponds, and that that weed both breeds and feeds them; but whether those Pikes so bred will ever breed by generation as the others do, I shall leave to the disquisitions of men of more curiosity and leasure then I profess my self to have; and shall proceed to tell you that you may fish for a Pike, either with a *ledger* or a *walking bait*; and you are to note, that I call that a Ledger baite which is fixed, or made to rest in one certain place when you shall be absent: and I call that a walking bait, which you take with you, and have ever in motion. Concerning which two I shall give you this direction, That your ledger bait

bait is best to be a living bait, whether it be a fish or a frog; and that you may make them live the longer, you may, or indeed you must take this course.

First, for your live bait of fish, a *Roch* or *Dace* is (I think) best and most tempting, and a *Pearch* is the longest lived on a hook, and having cut off his fin on his back, which may be done without hurting him, you must take your knife, (which cannot be too sharp) and betwixt the head and the fin on the back, cut or make an incision, or such a scar as you may put the arming wier of your hook into it, with as little bruising or hurting the fish as Art and diligence will enable you to do, and so carrying your arming wier along his back, unto, or near the tile of your Fish, betwixt the skin and the body of it, draw out that wier or arming of your hook at another scar near to his tail: then tye him about it with thred, but no harder then of necessity you must to prevent hurting the fish; and the better to avoid hurting the Fish, some have a kind of probe to open the way, for the more easie entrance and passage of your wyer or arming: but as for these, time and a little experience will teach you better then I can by words; therefore I will for the present say no more of this, but come next to give you some directions how to bait your hook with a frog.

Ven. But good Master, did not you say even

now, that ſome *Frogs* were venemous, and is it not dangerous to touch them?

Piſc. Yes, but I will give you ſome Rules or Cautions concerning them: And firſt, you are to note, there are two kinds of *Frogs*; that is to ſay, (if I may ſo expreſs my ſelf) a *fleſh*, and a *fiſh-frog*: by fleſh *frogs*, I mean *frogs* that breed and live on the land; and of theſe there be ſeveral ſorts alſo and colours, ſome being peckled, ſome greeniſh, ſome blackiſh, or brown: the green *Frog*, which is a ſmall one, is by *Topſel* taken to be venemous; and ſo is the *padock*, or *Frog-padog*, which uſually keeps or breeds on the land, and is very large and bony, and big, eſpecially the She frog of that kind; yet theſe will ſometime come into the water, but it is not often; and the land frogs are ſome of them obſerved by him, to breed by laying eggs, and others to breed of the ſlime and duſt of the earth, and that in winter they turne to ſlime again, and that the next Summer that very ſlime returns to be a living creature; this is the opinion of *Pliny*: and * *Cardanus* undertakes to give reaſon for the raining of Frogs: but if it were in my power, it ſhould rain none but water-Frogs, for thoſe I think are not venemous, eſpecially the right water-Frog, which about *February* or *March* breeds in ditches by ſlime and blackiſh eggs in that ſlime, about which time of breeding the He and She Frog

* In his 16. Book, *De ſubtil.*

Frog are obſerved to uſe divers *Summer-ſaults*, and to croke and make a noiſe, which the land-frog, or Padok frog never does. Now of theſe water-frogs, if you intend to Fiſh with a frog for a Pike, you are to chuſe the yelloweſt that you can get, for that the Pike ever likes beſt. And thus uſe your frog, that he may continue long alive.

Put your hook into his mouth, which you may eaſily do from about the middle of *April* till *Auguſt*, and then the frogs mouth grows up, and he continues ſo for at leaſt ſix moneths without eating, but is ſuſtained, none but he whoſe name is Wonderful, knowes how. I ſay, put your hook, I mean the arming wyer through his mouth, and out at his gills, and then with a fine needle and ſilk ſow the upper part of his legg with onely one ſtitch to' the arming wire of your hook, or tye the frogs leg above the upper joynt to the armed wire, and in ſo doing, uſe him as though you loved him, that is, harm him as little as you may poſſibly, that he may live the longer.

And now, having given you this direction for the baiting your ledger hook with a live Fiſh or frog, my next muſt be to tell you, how your hook thus baited muſt or may be uſed: and it is thus. Having faſtned your hook to a line, which if it be not fourteen yards long, ſhould not be leſſe then twelve; you are to faſten

ſten that line to any bough near to a hole where a Pike is, or is likely to lie, or to have a haunt, and then wind your line on any forked ſtick, all your line except half a yard of it or rather more, and ſplit that forked ſtick with ſuch a nick or notch at one end of it, as may keep the line from any more of it ravelling from about the ſtick, then ſo much of it as you intended; and chuſe your forked ſtick to be of that bigneſs as may keep the fiſh or frog from pulling the forked ſtick under the water till the Pike bites, and then the Pike having pulled the line forth of the cliſt or nick of that ſtick in which it was gently faſtned, will have line enough to go to his hold and powch the bait: and if you would have this ledger bait to keep at a fixt place, undiſturbed by wind or other accidents which may drive it to the ſhore ſide, (for you are to note, that it is likelieſt to catch a Pike in the midſt of the water) then hang a ſmall Plummet of lead, a ſtone, or piece of tyle, or a turf in a ſtring, and caſt it into the water, with the forked ſtick, to hang upon the ground to be an Anchor to keep the forked ſtick from moving out of your intended place till the Pike come. This I take to be a very good way, to uſe ſo many ledger baits as you intend to make tryal of.

Or if you bait your hooks thus, with live Fiſh or Frogs, and in a windy day, faſten them thus to a bough or bundle of ſtraw, and by the help of

of that wind can get them to move croſſe a *pond* or *mere*, you are like to ſtand ſtill on the ſhore and ſee ſport, if there be any ſtore of *pikes*; or theſe live Baits may make ſport, being tied about the body or wings of a *Gooſe* or *Duck*, and ſhe chaſed over a Pond: and the like may be done with turning three or four live Baits thus faſtned to Bladders, or Boughs, or Bottles of Hay, or Flags, to ſwim down a river, whilſt you walk quietly alone on the ſhore, and are ſtill in expectation of ſport. The reſt muſt be taught you by practice, for time will not allow me to ſay more of this kind of fiſhing with live Baits.

And for your dead Bait for a *pike*, for that you may be taught by one dayes going a fiſhing with me, or any other body that fiſhes for him, for the baiting your hook with a dead *Gudgeon* or a *Roach*, and moving it up and down the water, is too eaſie a thing to take up any time to direct you to do it; and yet, becauſe I cut you ſhort in that, I will commute for it, by telling you that that was told me for a ſecret: it is this,

Diſſolve Gum of Ivie *in Oyle of* Spike, *and therewith annoynt your dead bait for a* Pike, *and then caſt it into a likely place, and when it has layn a ſhort time at the bottom, draw it towards the top of the water, and ſo up the ſtream, and it is more than likely that you have a* Pike *follow you with more than common eagerneſſe.* And

And some affirm, that any Bait annointed with the marrow of the Thigh-bone of an *Hern* is a great temptation to any Fish.

These have not been tried by me, but told me by a friend of note, that pretended to do me a courtesie: but if this direction to catch a *pike* thus do you no good, yet I am certain this direction how to roast him when he is caught, is choicely good, for I have tried it; and it is somewhat the better for not being common: but with my direction you must take this Caution, that your *pike* must not be a small one, that is, it must be half a Yard, and should be bigger.

First, open your Pike *at the gills, and if need be, cut also a little slit towards his belly; out of these take his guts, and keep his liver, which you are to shred very small with* Time, Sweet-margerome, *and a little* Winter-savoury; *to these put some pickled* Oysters, *and some* Anchovies *two or three, both these last whole (for the* Anchovies *will melt, and the* Oysters *should not) to these you must adde also a pound of sweet Butter, which you are to mix with the herbs that are shred, and let them all be well salted, (if the* Pike *be more than a yard long, then you may put into these herbs more than a pound, or if he be lesse, then lesse Butter will suffice:) these being thus mixt with a blade or two of* Mace, *must be put into the* Pikes *belly, and then his belly sowed up, and so sowed up as to keep all the Butter in his belly if it be possible,*

ſible, if not, then as much of it as you poſſible can, but take not off the ſcales; then you are to thruſt the ſpit through his mouth out at his tayle, and then with four, or five, or ſix ſplit ſticks, or very thin lathes, and a convenient quantity of Tape or Filliting, theſe laths are to be tyed round about the Pikes *body from his head to his tayle, and the Tape tyed ſomewhat thick to prevent his breaking or falling off from the ſpit; let him be roſted very leaſurely, and often baſted with Claret wine and Anchovyes, and Butter mixt together, and alſo with what moiſture falls from him into the pan: when you have roſted him ſufficiently, you are to hold under him (when you unwind or cut the Tape that tyes him) ſuch a diſh as you purpoſe to eat him out of, and let him fall into it with the ſawce that is roſted in his belly, and by this means the* Pike *will be kept unbroken and complete: then to the ſawce which was within, and alſo in the pan, you are to adde a fit quantity of the beſt Butter, and to ſqueeze the juyce of three or four Oranges: laſtly, you may either put into the* Pike *with the* Oyſters, *two cloves of Garlick, and take it whole out when the* Pike *is cut off the ſpit, or to give the ſawce a* hogo, *let the diſh (into which you let the* Pike *fall) be rubbed with it: the uſing or not uſing of this Garlick is left to your diſcretion.*

M. B.

This diſh of meat is too good for any but Anglers or honeſt men; and I truſt, you will prove

prove both, and therefore I have trusted you with this Secret.

Let me next tell you, that *Gesner* tells us there are no Pikes in *Spain*, and that the largest are in the Lake *Thrasimane* in *Italy*; and the next, if note quall to them, are the Pikes of *England*, and that in *England*, *Lincoln*-shire boasteth to have the biggest. Just so doth *Sussex* boast of four sorts of fish; namely an *Arundell Mullet*, a *Chichester Lobster*, a *Chelsey cockle*, and an *Amerly Trout*.

But I will take up no more of your time with this relation, but proceed to give you some observations of the *Carp*, and how to angle for him.

CHAP. IX.

Observations of the Carp, *with Directions how to fish for him.*

Pisc. THE *Carp* is the Queen of Rivers, a stately, a good, and a very subtil fish, that was not at first bred, nor hath been long in *England*, but is now naturalized. It is said, they were brought hither by one Mr. *Mascal* a Gentleman, that then lived at *Plumsted* in *Sussex*, a County that abounds more with this fish then any in this Nation. You

You may remember that I told you, *Gesner* says, there are no *Pikes* in *Spain*; and doubtlesse, there was a time, about a hundred or a few more years ago, when there were no *Carps* in *England*, as may seem to be affirmed by Sir *Richard Baker*, in whose Chronicle you may find these Verses.

Hops and Turkies, Carps and Beer
Came into England *all in a year.*

And doubtlesse as of Sea-fish the *Herring* dies soonest out of the water, and of fresh-water-fish the *Trout*, so (except the *Eele*) the *Carp* indures most hardnesse, and lives longest out of his own proper element. And therefore the report of the Carps being brought out of a forraigne into this Nation is the more probable.

Carps and Loaches are observed to breed severall months in one year, which Pikes and most other Fish do not. And this is partly proved by tame and wild *Rabbets*, as also by some *Ducks*, which will lay egs nine of the twelve months, and yet there be other *Ducks* that lay not longer then about one month. And it is the rather believed, because you shall scarce or never take a *Male Carp* without a *Melt*, or a *Female* without a *Roe* or *spawn*, and for the most part very much; and especially all the Summer season; and it is observed, that they breed more naturally in ponds then in running waters, (if they breed there at all;) and that those

those that live in Rivers are taken by men of the best palates to be much the better meat.

And it is observed, that in some ponds *Carps* will not breed, especially in cold ponds; but where they will breed, they breed innumerably; *Aristotle* and *Pliny* say, six times in a year, if there be no *Pikes* nor *Pearch* to devour their Spawn, when it is cast upon grasse, or flags, or weeds, where it lies ten or twelve daies before it be enlivened.

The *Carp*, if he have water-room and good feed, will grow to a very great bigness and length: I have heard, to be much above a yard long. 'Tis said (by *Jovius*, who hath writ of Fishes) that in the Lake *Lurian* in *Italy*, *Carps* have thriven to be more then fifty pound weight, which is the more probable, for as the *Bear* is conceiv'd and born suddenly; and being born is but short-liv'd: So on the contrary, the *Elepham* is said to be two years in his dams belly (some think he is ten years in it,) and being born growes in bigness twenty years; and 'tis observ'd too that he lives to the Age of a hundred years. And 'tis also observ'd that the *Crocadile* is very long-liv'd, and more then that, that all that long life he thrives in bigness, and so I think some *Carps* do, especially in some places; though I never saw one above 23. inches, which was a great and a goodly Fish: But

have

have been assured there are of a far greater size, and in *England* too.

Now, as the increase of *Carps* is wonderful for their number; so there is not a reason found out, I think by any, why they should breed in some ponds, and not in others of the same nature, for soil and all other circumstances; and as their breeding, so are their decaies also very mysterious: I have both read it, and been told by a Gentleman of tryed honesty, that he has known sixty or more large *Carps* put into several ponds near to a house, where by reason of the stakes in the ponds, and the Owners constant being near to them, it was impossible they should be stole away from him, and that when he has after three or four years emptyed the pond, and expected an increase from them by breeding young ones (for that they might do so, he had, as the rule is, put in three Melters for one Spawner) he has, I say, after three or four years found neither a young nor old *Carp* remaining. And the like I have known of one that has almost watched his pond, and at a like distance of time at the Fishing of a pond found of seventy or eighty large *Carps* not above five or six: and that he had forborn longer to Fish the said pond, but that he saw in a hot day in Summer, a large *Carp* swim near to the top of the water with a Frog upon his head, and that he upon that occasion caused his pond to be let

dry: and I say, of seventy or eighty *Carps*, only found five or six in the said pond, and those very sick and lean, and with every one a Frog sticking so fast on the head of the said *Carpi*, that the Frog would not be got off without extreme force or killing; and the Gentleman that did affirm this to me, told me he saw it, and did declare his belief to be, (and I also believe the same) that he thought the other *Carps* that were so strangely lost, were so killed by frogs, and then devoured.

But I am faln into this Discourse by accident, of which I might say more, but it has proved longer then I intended, and possibly may not to you be considerable; I shall therefore give you three or four more short observations of the *Carp*, and then fall upon some directions how you shall Fish for him.

The age of *Carps* is by Sir *Francis Bacon* (in his History of Life and Death) observed to be but ten years; yet others think they live longer. *Gesner* saies a Carp has been known to live in the *Palatinate* above a hundred years: But most conclude, that (contrary to the *Pike* or *Luce*) all *Carps* are the better for age and bigness, the tongues of *Carps* are noted to be choice and costly meat, especially to them that buy them; but *Gesner* saies, *Carps* have no tongue like other Fish, but a piece of flesh like Fish in their mouth like to a tongue, and should be called

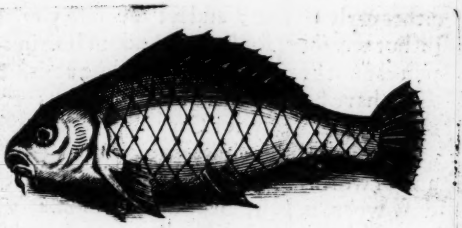
called a palate: But it is certain it is choicely good, and that the *Carp* is to be reckoned amongst those leather-mouthed fish, which I told you have their teeth in their throat, and for that reason he is very seldom lost by breaking his hold, if your hook be once stuck into his chaps.

I told you, that Sir *Francis Bacon* thinks that the Carp lives but ten years, but *Janus Dubravius* has writ a Book of Fish and Fish-ponds, in which he saies, that *Carps* begin to Spawn at the age of three years, and continues to do so till thirty; he saies also, that in the time of their breeding, which is in Summer, when the Sun hath warmed both the earth and water, and so apted them also for generation, that then three or four Male-Carps will follow a Female, and that then she putting on a seeming coyness, they force her through weeds and flags, where she lets fall her eggs or Spawn, which sticks fast to the weeds, and then they let fall their Melt upon it, and so it becomes in a short time to be a living fish; and as I told you, it is thought the Carp does this severall months in the year, and most believe that most fish breed after this manner, except the Eele: and it has been observed, that when the Spawner has weakned her self by doing that natural office, that two or three Melters have helped her from off the weeds, by bearing her up on both sides;

and garding her into the deep. And you may note, that though this may seem a curiosity not worth observing, yet others have judged it worth their time and costs, to make *Glasse-hives*, and order them in such a manner as to see how bees have bred and made their *Honey-combs*, and how they have obeyed their King, and governed their Common-wealth. But it is thought that all Carps are not bred by generation, but that some breed other waies, as some Pikes do.

The Physicians make the *galls* and *stones* in the heads of Carps to be very medicinable; but 'tis not to be doubted but that in *Italy* they make great profit of the Spawn of Carps, by selling it to the Jewes, who make it into red *Caviar*, the Jews not being by their Law admitted to eat of *Caviare* made of the Sturgion, that being a Fish that wants scales, and (as may appear in *Levit.* 11.) by them to be reputed unclean.

Much more might be said out of him, and out of *Aristotle*, which *Dubravius* often quotes in his Discourse of Fishes; but it might rather perplex then satisfie you, and therefore I shall rather chuse to direct you how to catch, then spend more time in discoursing either of the nature or the breeding of this *Carp*,



or of any more circumſtances concerning him, but yet I ſhall remember you of what I told you before, that he is a very ſubtil Fiſh, and hard to be caught.

And my firſt direction is, that if you will Fiſh for a *Carp*, you muſt put on a very large meaſure of *patience*; eſpecially to Fiſh for a *River Carp*: I have known a very good Fiſher angle diligently four or ſix hours in a day, for three or four daies together for a *River Carp*, and not have a bite: and you are to note, that in ſome ponds it is as hard to catch a Carp as in a River; that is to ſay, where they have ſtore of feed, and the water is of a clayiſh colour: But you are to remember, that I have told you there is no rule without an exception, and therefore being poſſeſt with that hope and patience which I wiſh to all Fiſhers, eſpecially to the *Carp-Angler*, I ſhall tell you with what bait to Fiſh for

him. But first you are to know, that it must be either early or late; and let me tell you, that in hot weather (for he will seldom bite in cold) you cannot be too early or too late at it. And some have been so curious as to say, the 10. of *April* is a fatal day for Carps.

The Carp bites either at worms or at paste, and of worms I think the blewish Marsh or Meadow worm is best, but possibly another worm not too big may do as well, and so may a green Gentle: And as for pastes, there are almost as many sorts as there are Medicines for the Toothach, but doubtless sweet pastes are best; I mean, pastes made with honey or with sugar: which, that you may the better beguile this crafty Fish, should be thrown into the Pond or place in which you fish for him some hours before you undertake your tryal of skill with the Angle-rod: and doubtless if it be thrown into the water a day or two before, at several times and in small pellets, you are the likelier when you fish for the Carp to obtain your desired sport: or in a large Pond to draw them to any certain place, that they may the better and with more hope be fished for, you are to throw into it in some certain place, either Grains or Bloud mixt with Cow-dung, or with Bran; or any Garbage, as Chickens guts or the like, and then some of your small sweet pellets with which you purpose to angle: and these small

pellets

pellets being a few of them alſo thrown in as you are Angling.

And your paſte muſt be thus made: Take the fleſh of a Rabbet or Cat cut ſmall, and Beans flowre, and if that may not be eaſily got, get other flowre, and then mix theſe together, and put to them either Sugar, or Honey, which I think better, and then beat theſe together in a Mortar, or ſometimes work them in your hands, (your hands being very clean) and then make it into a ball, or two, or three, as you like beſt for your uſe: but you muſt work or pound it ſo long in the Mortar, as to make it ſo tough as to hang upon your hook without waſhing from it, yet not too hard; or that you may the better keep it on your hook, you may knead with your paſte a little (and not much) white or yellowiſh wool.

And if you would have this paſte keep all the year for any other Fiſh, then mix with it *Virgins wax* and *clarified honey*, and work them together with your hands before the Fire, then make theſe into balls, and it will keep all the year.

And if you fiſh for a Carp with Gentles, then put upon your hook a ſmall piece of Scarlet about this bigneſſe [redacted], it being ſoked in, or annointed with *Oyle of Peter*, called by ſome *Oyle of the Rock*, and if your Gentles be put two or three dayes before into a box or horn an-

nointed with honey, and ſo put upon your hook, as to preſerve them to be living, you are as like to kill this crafty Fiſh this way as any other: But ſtill as you are Fiſhing chaw a little white or brown bread in your mouth, and caſt it into the pond about the place where your Flote ſwims. Other baites there be, but theſe with diligence, and patient watchfulneſs, will do it better then any that I have ever practiſed, or heard of: And yet I ſhall tell you, that the crumbs of white bread and honey made into a paſte, is a good bait for a *Carp*, and you know it is more eaſily made. And having ſaid thus much of the *Carp*, my next diſcourſe ſhall be of the *Bream*, which ſhall not prove ſo tedious, and therefore I deſire the continuance of your attention.

But firſt I will tel you how to make this *Carp* that is ſo curious to be caught, ſo curious a diſh of meat, as ſhall make him worth all your labour; and though it is not without ſome trouble and charges, yet it will recompence both.

Take a Carp *(alive if poſſible) ſcour him, and rub him clean with water and ſalt, but ſcale him not, then open him, and put him with his bloud and his liver (which you muſt ſave when you open him) into a ſmall pot or kettle; then take ſweet Margerome, Time and Parſley, of each half a handful, a ſprig of Roſemary, and another of Savoury, bind them into two or three ſmall bundles, and put them to your Carp, with*

with four or five whole Onyons, twenty pickled Oysters, and three Anchovies. Then pour upon your Carp as much claret wine as will onely cover him; and season your claret well with salt, Cloves and Mace, and the rinds of Oranges and Lemmons, cover your pot and set it on a quick fire, till it be sufficiently boiled; then take out the Carp and lay it with the broth into the dish, and poure upon it a quarter of a pound of fresh butter melted and beaten, with half a dozen spoonfuls of the broth, the yolks of two or three eggs, and some of the herbs shred, garnish your dish with Lemmons, and so serve it up.

Dr. T.

CHAP. X.

Observations of the Bream, *and Directions to catch him.*

Pisc. THE *Bream* being at a full growth is a large and stately Fish; he will breed both in Rivers and ponds: but loves best to live in ponds, and where, if he likes the water and aire, he will grow not only to be very large, but as fat as a Hog: he is by *Gesner* taken to be more pleasant or sweet then wholesome; this Fish is long in growing, but breeds exceedingly in an water that pleases him, yea, in many Ponds so fast

fast, as to over-store them, and starve the other Fish.

He is very broad with a forked taile, and his scales set in excellent order, he hath large eyes and a narrow sucking mouth; he hath two sets of teeth, and a lozing like bone, a bone to help his grinding. The Melter is observed to have two large Melts, and the Female two large bags of eggs or spawn.

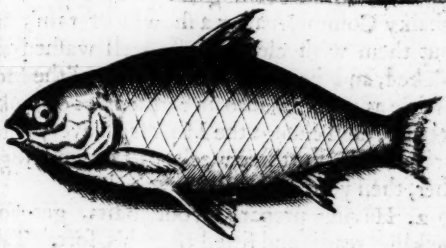
Gesner reports, that in *Poland* a certain, and a great number of large Breames were put into a Pond, which in the next following winter was frozen up into one intire ice, and not one drop of water remaining, nor one of these fish to be found, though they were diligently searcht for; and yet the next Spring when the ice was thawed, and the weather warme, they all appeared again. This *Gesner* affirms, and I quote my Author, because it seems almost as incredible as the *Resurrection* to an *Atheist*. But it may win something in point of believing it, to him that considers the breeding or renovation of the Silk-worm, and of many insects. And that is considerable which Sir *Francis Bacon* observes in his History of Life and Death *(fol. 20.)* that there be some herbs that dye and spring every year, and some endure longer.

But though some do not, yet the *French* esteem this Fish highly, and to that end have this Proverb, *He that hath Breams in his pond is able*

able to bid his friend welcome. And it is noted, that the beſt part of a Breame is his belly and head.

Some ſay, that *Breams* and *Roaches* will mix their eggs, and melt together, and ſo there is in many places a Baſtard breed of *Breams*, that never come to be either large or good, but very numerous.

The Baits good to catch this *Bream* are ma-



ny. Firſt, paſte made of brown bread and honey, gentles, or the broode of waſps that be young, and then not unlike Gentles; & ſhould be hardned in an oven, or dried on a tile before the fire: or there is at the root of docks, or flags, or ruſhes in watry places, a worm not unlike a Magot, at which Tench will bite freely. Or he will bite at a Graſhopper with his legs nipt off in *June* and *July*, or at ſeveral flyes under water, which may be found on flags that grow near

neer to the water ſide. I doubt not but that there be many other baits that are good, but I will turn them all into this moſt excellent one, either for a *Carp* or *Bream*, in any river or Mere: it was given to me by a moſt honeſt and excellent Angler, and hoping you will prove both, I will impart it to you.

1. Let your bait be as big a red worm as you can find, without a knot. Get a pint or quart of them in an evening in garden walks, or chalky Commons after a ſhowre of rain; and put them with clean Moſſe well waſhed and picked, and the water ſqueezed out of the Moſs as drie as you can, into an earthen pot or pipkin ſet drie, and change the Moſs freſh every three or four daies for three weeks or a moneth together, then your bait will be at the beſt.

2. Having prepared your baits, get your tackling ready and fitted after this ſort. Take three long Angling Rods, and as many and more ſilk, or ſilk and hair lines, and as many large Swan or Gooſe-quil floats. Then take a piece of Lead made after this manner, and faſten them to the lower ends of your Lines. Then faſten your link-hook alſo to the lead, and to the end of your Line, let there be about a foot or ten inches between the lead and the hook, but be ſure the lead be heavie enough to ſink the floate or quil under water, and not the quil to bear up the

the lead. Note, that your link next the hook may be ſmaller then the reſt of your line, if you dare adventure for fear of taking the *Pike* or *Pearch*, who will aſſuredly viſit your hooks, till they be taken out (as I will ſhew you afterwards) before either Carp or Bream will come near to bite. Note alſo, that when the worm is well baited, it will crawle up and down, as far as the lead will give leave, which much inticeth the Fiſh to bite without ſuſpicion.

3. Having thus prepared your baits, and fitted your tackling, repaire to the River, where you have ſeen them to ſwim in skuls or ſhoales in the Summer time in a hot afternoon, about three or four of the clock, and watch their going forth of their holes and returning (which you may well diſcern) for they return about four of the clock moſt of them ſeeking food at the bottom, yet one or two will lie on the top of the water, rolling and tumbling themſelves, whilſt the reſt are under him at the bottom, and ſo you ſhall perceive him to keep Sentinel; then mark where he plaies moſt, and ſtaies longeſt, (which commonly is in the broadeſt and deepeſt place of the River) and there, or near thereabouts, at a clear bottom, and a convenient landing place, take one of your Angles ready fitted as aforeſaid, and ſound the bottom, about eight or ten foot deep, two yards from the bank is the beſt. Then conſider with your ſelf whether

ther that water will rise or fall by the next morning by reason of any water-mills near, and according to your discretion take the depth of the place, where you mean after to cast your ground-bait, and to Fish, to half an inch; that the lead lying on or near the ground-bait, the top of the floate may onely appear upright half an inch above the water.

Thus you having found and fitted for the place and depth thereof, then go home and prepare your ground-bait, which is next to the fruit of your labours to be regarded.

The Ground-Bait.

You shall take a peck, or a peck and a half (according to the greatness of the stream, and deepness of the water, where you mean to angle) of sweet gross-ground barley malt, and boil it in a kettle (one or two warmes is enough) then strain it through a bag into a tub (the liquor whereof hath often done my horse much good;) and when the bag and malt is near cold, take it down to the water-side about eight or nine of the clock in the evening, and not before; cast in two parts of your ground-bait, squeezed hard between both your hands, it will sink presently to the bottom, and be sure it may rest in the very place where you mean to angle; if the stream run hard or move a little, cast your malt in handfuls the higher upwards the stream. You may

may between your hands close the Malt so fast in handfuls, that the water will hardly part it with the fall.

Your ground thus baited and tackling fitted, leave your bag with the rest of your tackling, and ground-bait near the sporting-place all night, and in the morning about three or four of the clock visit the water-side (but not too near) for they have a Watch-man, and are watchful themselves.

Then gently take one of your three rods, and bait your hook, casting it over your ground-bait, & gently and secretly draw it to you til the Lead rests about the middle of the ground-bait.

Then take a second Rod and cast in about a yard above, and your third a yard below the first Rod, and stay the Rods in the ground, but go your self so far from the water side, that you perceive nothing but the top of the floats, which you must watch most diligently, then when you have a bite you shall perceive the top of your float to sink suddenly into the water; yet nevertheless be not too hasty to run to your Rods, untill you see that Line goes clear away, then creep to the water-side, and give as much Line as possibly you can; if it be a Carp or Bream they will go to the farther side of the River, then strike gently, and hold your Rod at a bent a little while; for if you both pull, you are sure to lose your Game, for either your line,

or

or hook, or hold will break; and after you have overcome them they will make noble ſport, and are very ſhie to be landed. The Carp is far ſtronger and mettleſome than the Bream.

Much more is to be obſerved in this kind of Fiſh and Fiſhing, but it is far fitter for experience and diſcourſe than paper. Only thus much is neceſſary for you to know, and to be mindful and careful of, That if the Pike or Pearch do breed in that River, they will be ſure to bite firſt, and muſt firſt be taken. And for the moſt part they are very large, and will repair to your ground-bait, not that they will eat of it, but will feed and ſport themſelves amongſt the young Fry, that gather about and hover over the Bait.

The way to diſcern the Pike and to take him, if you miſtruſt your Bream-hook, (for I have taken a Pike a yard long ſeveral times at my Bream-hooks, and ſometimes he hath had the luck to ſhare my line.)

Take a ſmall Bleak, or Roche, or Gudgion, and bait it, and ſet it alive among your Rods two foot deep from the Cork, with a little red worm on the point of the hook, then take a few crums of White-bread, or ſome of the ground-bait, and ſprinkle it gently amongſt your Rods. If Mr. Pike be there, then the little Fiſh will skip out of the water, but the live-ſet Bait is ſure to be taken.

Thus

Thus continue your ſport from four in the morning till eight, and if it be a gloomy windy day, they will bite all day long. But this is too long to ſtand to your rods at one place, & it wil ſpoil your evening ſport that day; which is this,

About four of the clock in the Afternoon repair to your baited place, and as ſoon as you come to the water ſide, caſt in one half of the reſt of your ground-bait, and ſtand off: then whilſt the Fiſh are gathering together, (for there they will moſt certainly come for their ſupper) you may take a pipe of Tobacco; and then in with your three rods as in the morning: You will find excellent ſport that evening till eight of the clock; then caſt in the reſidue of your ground-bait, and next morning by four of the clock viſit them again for four hours, which is the beſt ſport of all; and after that let them reſt till you and your friends have a mind to more ſport.

From St. *James* Tide untill *Bartholomew* Tide is the beſt, when they have had all the Summers food, they are the fatteſt.

Obſerve laſtly, That after three or four dayes fiſhing together your game will be very ſhie and wary, and you ſhall hardly get above a bite or two at a baiting; then your onely way is to deſiſt from your ſport about two or three dayes; and in the mean time (on the place you late baited, and again intend to bait) you ſhall

take a turf of green, but short grasse, as big or bigger than a round Trencher; to the top of this turf, on the green side, you shall with a Needle and green thred fasten one by one as many little red worms as will near cover all the turf: Then take a round board or trencher, make a hole in the middle thereof, and through the turf placed on the board or trencher, with a string or cord as long as is fitting, tied to a pole, let it down to the bottom of the water for the Fish to feed upon without disturbance about two or three dayes; and after that you have drawn it away, you may fall to and enjoy your former recreation. *B. A.*

CHAP. XI.

Observations of the Tench, *and advice how to angle for him.*

Pisc. THE *Tench*, the Physician of Fishes, is observed to love Ponds better than Rivers, and to love pits better than either; yet *Cambden* observes there is a River in *Dorset-shire* that abounds with Tenches; but doubtlesse they retire to the most deep and quiet places in it.

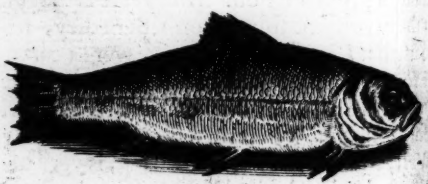
This Fish hath very large Fins, very small and smooth Scales, a red circle about his Eyes, which

which are big and of a gold colour, and that from either angle of his mouth there hangs down a little Barb; in every *Tenches* head there are two little ſtones, which forreign Phyſicians make great uſe of, but he is not commended for wholſome meat, though there be very much uſe made of them for outward applications. *Rondeletius* ſayes, That at his being at *Rome*, *he ſaw a great cure done by applying a Tench to the feet of a very ſick man.* This he ſayes was done after an unuſual manner by certain Jews. And it is obſerved that many of thoſe people have many ſecrets yet unknown to Chriſtians; ſecrets that have never yet been written, but have been ſince the dayes of their *Solomon*, (who knew the nature of all things, even from the Cedar to the Shrub) delivered by tradition from the father to the ſon, and ſo from generation to generation without writing, or (unleſſe it were caſually) without the leaſt communicating them to any other Nation or Tribe: for to do that they account a prophanation. And yet it is thought that they, or ſome ſpirit worſe than they, firſt told us, that Lice ſwallowed alive were a certain cure for the Yellow-Jaundice. This & other medicines were diſcover'd by them or by revelation, for doubtleſs we attain'd them not by ſtudy.

Well, this fiſh, beſides his eating, is very uſefull both dead and alive for the good of man-kind. But. I will meddle no more with that;

my honeſt, humble Art teaches no ſuch boldneſſe; there are too many fooliſh medlers in Phyſick and Divinity that think themſelves fit to meddle with hidden ſecrets, and ſo bring deſtruction to their followers. I'l not meddle with them farther, then to wiſh them wiſer; and ſhall tell you next, (for I hope I may be ſo bold) that the Tench is the Phyſitian of fiſhes, to the Pike eſpecially, and that the Pike being either ſick or hurt, is cured by the touch of the Tench. And it is obſerved, that the Tyrant Pike will not be a Wolf to his Phyſician, but forbears to devour him, though he be never ſo hungry.

This fiſh that carries a naturall Balſome in him to cure both himſelf and others, loves yet to feed in very foule water, and among weeds. And yet I am ſure he eats pleaſantly, and doubtleſſe you will think ſo too if you taſte him. And I ſhall therefore proceed to give you ſome few, and but a few directions how to catch this *Tench*,



of which I have given you theſe obſervations.

He will bite at a Paſte made of brown bread and honey, or at a Marſh-worm, or a Lob-worm; he inclines very much to any paſte with which Tar is mixt; and he will bite alſo at a ſmaller worm, with his head nipp'd off, and a Cod-worm put on the hook before that worm; and I doubt not but that he will alſo in the three hot months (for in the nine colder he ſtirs not much) bite at a Flag-worm, or at a green Gentle, but can poſitively ſay no more of the Tench, he being a Fiſh that I have not often Angled for; but I wiſh my honeſt Scholer may, and be ever fortunate when he Fiſhes.

CHAP. XII.

Obſervations of the Pearch, *and directions how to fiſh for him.*

Piſc. THE *Pearch* is a very good, and a very bold biting fiſh; He is one of the Fiſhes of prey, that like the *Pike* and *Trout*, carries his teeth in his mouth, which is very large, and he dare venter to kill and devour ſeverall other kinds of fiſh: he has a hook't or hog back, which is armed with ſharp and ſtiffe briſtles, and all his skin armed or covered over with thick, dry, hard

hard ſcales, and hath (which few other Fiſh have) two Fins on his back. He is ſo bold, that he will invade one of his own kind, which the Pike will not do willingly, and you may therefore eaſily believe him to be a bold biter.

The *Pearch* is of great eſteem in *Italy* ſaith *Aldrovandus*, and eſpecially the leaſt are there eſteemed a daintie diſh. And *Geſner* prefers the *Pearch* and Pike above the *Trout*, or any freſh-water-Fiſh: he ſaies the *Germanes* have this Proverb, *More wholſom then a Pearch of Rhine*; and he ſaies the River-*Pearch* is ſo wholſome, that Phyſicians allow him to be eaten by wounded men or men in Feavers, or to Women in Child-bed.

He ſpawns but once a year, and is by Phyſicians held very nutritive: yet by many to be hard of digeſtion: They abound more in the River *Poe* and in *England* (ſayes *Randelitius*) then other parts, and have in their brain a ſtone, which is in forrain parts ſold by Apothecaries, being there noted to be very medicinable againſt the ſtone in the reines: Theſe be a part of the commendations which ſome Philoſophical brains have beſtowed upon the freſh-water *Pearch*: yet they commend the Sea-*pearch*, which is known by having but one fin on his back, (of which they ſay, we *Engliſh* ſee but a few) to be a much better fiſh.

The *pearch* growes ſlowly, yet will grow, as

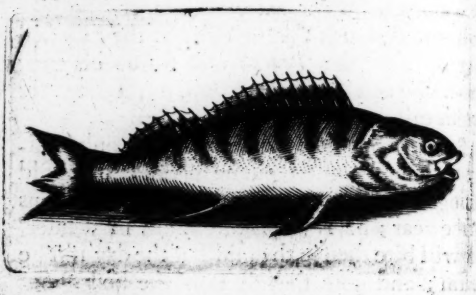
I have been credibly informed, to be almoſt two foot long; for my informer told me, ſuch a one was not long ſince taken by Sir *Abraham Williams*, a Gentleman of worth, and a lover of Angling, that yet lives, and I wiſh he may: this was a deep bodied Fiſh: and doubtleſs durſt have devoured a *Pike* of half his own length; for I have told you, he is a bold Fiſh, ſuch a one as but for extreme hunger, the *Pike* will not devour; for to affright the *Pike* and ſave himſelf, the *Pearch* will ſet up his fins, much like as a *Turkie-Cock* will ſometimes ſet up his tail.

But, my Scholer, the Pearch is not only valiant to defend himſelf, but he is (as I ſaid) a bold biting Fiſh, yet he will not bite at all ſeaſons of the year; he is verie abſtemious in Winter, yet will bite then in the midſt of the day if it be warm; and note that all Fiſh bite beſt about the midſt of a warm day in Winter, and he hath been obſerved by ſome, not uſually to bite till the *Mulberry-tree* buds, that is to ſay, till extreme froſts be paſt that Spring; for when the *Mulberry-tree* bloſſomes, many Gardners obſerve their forward fruit to be paſt the danger of Froſts, and ſome have made the like obſervation of the *Pearches* biting.

But bite the Pearch will, and that very boldly; and, as one has wittily obſerved, if there be twentie or fortie in a hole, they may be at one

ſtanding all catch'd one after another; they being, as he ſaies, like the wicked of the world, not afraid, though their fellowes and companions periſh in their ſight. And you may obſerve, that they are not like the ſolitary Pike, but love to accompany one another, and march together in troops.

And the baits for this bold Fiſh



are not many; I mean, he will bite as well at ſome, or at any of theſe three, as at any or all others whatſoever: a *Worm*, a *Minnow*, or a little *Frog* (of which you may find many in hay-time,) and of *worms*, the Dunghil-worm called a *Brandling*, I take to be beſt, being well ſcowred in Moſs or Fennel; or at a worm that lies under a cow-turd with a blewiſh head. And if you *rove* for a Pearch with a *Minnow*, then it is beſt to be alive: you ſticking your hook through his back-fin, or a *Minnow* with the hook

hook in his upper lip, and letting him ſwim up and down about mid-water, or a little lower, and you ſtill keeping him to about that depth, by a Cork, which ought not to be a very little one: and the like way you are to Fiſh for the Pearch with a ſmall frog, your hook being faſtned through the skin of his leg, towards the upper part of it: And laſtly, I will give you but this advice, that you give the Pearch time enough when he bites, for there was ſcarce ever any Angler that has given him too much. And now I think beſt to reſt my ſelf, for I have almoſt ſpent my ſpirits with talking ſo long.

Venat. Nay, good Maſter, one fiſh more, for you ſee it rains ſtill, and you know our Angles are like monie put to uſurie; they may thrive, though we ſit ſtill and do nothing, but talk and enjoy one anothet. Come, come the other fiſh, good Maſter.

Piſc. But Scholer, have you nothing to mixe with this diſcourſe, which now grows both tedious and tireſome? ſhall I have nothing from you that ſeems to have both a good memorie, and a chearful Spirit?

Ven. Yes, Maſter, I will ſpeak you a Copie of Verſes that were made by Doctor *Donne*, and made to ſhew the world that he could make ſoft & ſmooth Verſes when he thought ſmoothneſs worth his labour; and I love them the better, becauſe they allude to Rivers, and fiſh and fiſhing. They be theſe: *Come*

Come live with me, and be my Love,
And we will some new pleasures prove,
Of golden sands, and Christal brooks,
With silken lines, and silver hooks.

There will the River whispering run,
Warm'd by the eyes more then the Sun;
And there th' inamel'd fish will stay,
Begging themselves they may betray.

When thou wilt swim in that live bath,
Each fish, which every channel hath,
Most amorously to thee will swim,
Gladder to catch thee, then thou him.

If thou, to be so seen, beest loath
By Sun or Moon, thou darknest both;
And if mine eyes have leave to see,
I need not their light, having thee.

Let others freeze with Angling reeds,
And cut their legs with shels and weeds,
Or treacherously poor fish beset,
With strangling snares, or windowy net.

Let course bold hands, from slimy nest,
The bedded fish in banks outwrest,
Let curious Traitors sleave silk flies,
To' witch poor wandring fishes eyes.

For thee, thou needſt no ſuch deceit,
For thou thy ſelf art thine own bait;
That fiſh that is not catch thereby,
Is wiſer far, alas, then I.

Piſc. Well remembred, honeſt Scholer, I thank you for theſe choice Verſes, which I have heard formerly, but had quite forgot, till they were recovered by your happie memorie. Well, being I have now reſted my ſelf a little, I will make you ſome requital, by telling you ſome obſervations of the Eele, for it rains ſtill, and becauſe (as you ſay) our *Angles* are as money put to Uſe, that thrive when we play, therefore we'l ſit ſtill and injoy our ſelves a little longer under this *honey-ſuckle-hedg.*

CHAP. XIII.

Obſervations of the Eele, *and other fiſh that want ſcales, and how to fiſh for them.*

Piſc. IT is agreed by moſt men, that the *Eele* is a moſt dantie fiſh; the Romans have eſteemed her the *Hellena* of their feaſts; and ſome *The Queen of pleaſure.* But moſt men differ about their breeding: ſome ſay they breed by generation as other fiſh do; and others, that they breed (as ſome wormes do)

For

do) of mud, as Rats and Mice, and many other living creatures are bred in *Egypt*, by the overflowing of the River *Nilus*: or out of the putrifaction of the earth, and divers other waies. Thoſe that deny them to breed by generation as other fiſh do, ask, if any man ever ſaw an *Eele* to have a Spawn or Melt? and they are anſwered, that they may be as certain of their breeding, as if they had ſeen Spawn: for they ſay, that they are certain that *Eeles* have all parts fit for generation, like other fiſh, but ſo ſmall as not to be eaſily diſcerned, by reaſon of their fatneſs; but that diſcerned they may be, and that the He and the She *Eele* may be diſtinguiſhed by their fins. And *Randelitius* ſaies, he has ſeen *Eeles* cling togethet like *Dew-worms*.

And others ſay, that *Eeles* growing old, breed other *Eeles* out of the corruption of their own age, which Sir *Francis Bacon* ſaies, exceeds not ten years. And others ſay, that as *Pearles* are made of glutinous dew-drops, which are condenſed by the Suns heat in thoſe Countries, ſo *Eeles* are bred of a particular dew falling in the moneths of *May* or *June* on the banks of ſome particular Ponds or Rivers (apted by nature for that end) which in a few daies is by the Suns heat turned into *Eeles*. And ſome of the Ancients have called the *Eels* that are thus bred, *The Off-ſpring of Jove*. I have ſeen in the beginning of *July*, in a River not far from *Canterbury*, ſome parts

parts of it covered over with young *Eeles*, about the thickneſs of a ſtraw; and theſe *Eeles* did lie on the top of that water, as thick as motes are ſaid to be in the Sun: and I have heard the like of other Rivers, as namely in *Severn*, (where they are call'd *Yelvers*) and in a *pond* or *mere* near unto *Stafford-ſhire*, where about a ſet time in Summer, ſuch ſmall Eeles abound ſo much, that many of the poorer ſort of people, that inhabit near to it, take ſuch Eeles out of this Mere, with ſieves or ſheets, and make a kind of *Eele-cake* of them, and eat it like as bread. And *Geſner* quotes venerable *Bede* to ſay, that in *England* there is an Iland called *Ely*, by reaſon of the innumerable number of *Eeles* that breed in it. But that *Eeles* may be bred as ſome worms, and ſome kind of *Bees* and *Waſps* are, either of *dew*, or out of the corruption of the earth, ſeems to be made probable by the *Barnacles* and young *Goſlings* bred by the Suns heat and the rotten planks of an old Ship, and hatched of trees; both which are related for truths by *Dubartas* and *Lobel*, and alſo by our learned *Cambden*, and laborious *Gerrard* in his *Herball*.

It is ſaid by *Randelitius*, that thoſe *Eeles* that are bred in Rivers that relate to, or be nearer to the Sea, never return to the freſh waters (as the *Salmon* does alwaies deſire to do) when they have once taſted the ſalt water; and I do the more eaſily believe this, becauſe I am certain that

that powdered Bief is a most excellent bait to catch an *Eele*; and though Sir *Francis Bacon* will allow the *Eeles* life to be but ten years; yet he in his History of Life and Death, mentions a *Lamprey* belonging to the *Roman* Emperour to be made tame, and so kept for almost threescore years: and that such useful and pleasant observations were made of this *Lamprey*, that *Crassus* the Oratour (who kept her) lamented her death. And we read (in Doctor *Hackwel*) that *Hortensius* was seen to weep at the death of a *Lamprey* that he had kept long, and loved exceedingly.

It is granted by all, or most men, that *Eeles*; for about six moneths (that is to say, the six cold moneths of the year) stir not up and down, neither in the Rivers nor the Pools in which they usually are, but get into the soft earth or mud, and there many of them together bed themselves, and live without feeding upon any thing (as I have told you some *Swallowes* have been observed to do in hollow-trees for those six cold moneths;) and this the *Eel* and *Swallow* do, as not being able to endure winter weather: For *Gesner* quotes *Albertus* to say, that in the year 1125 (that years winter being more cold then usually) *Eeles* did by natures instinct get out of the water into a stack of hay in a Meadow upon drie ground, and there bedded themselves, but yet at last a frost kil'd them.

And

And our *Cambden* relates, that in *Lancaſhire* Fiſhes are dig'd out of the earth with Spades, where no water is near to the place. I ſhall ſay little more of the Eele, but that, as it is obſerved he is impatient of cold; ſo it hath been obſerved, that in warm weather an *Eele* has been known to live five daies out of the water.

And laſtly, let me tell you that ſome curious ſearchers into the natures of Fiſh, obſerve that there be ſeveral ſorts or kinds of *Eeles*, as the *ſilver Eele*, and green or *greeniſh Eele*, (with which the River of *Thames* abounds, and thoſe are called *Gregs*;) and a *blackiſh Eele*, whoſe head is more flat and bigger than ordinary *Eeles*; and alſo an *Eele* whoſe Fins are reddiſh, and but ſeldome taken in this Nation, (and yet taken ſometimes:) Theſe ſeveral kinds of *Eeles* are (ſay ſome) diverſly bred, as namely, out of the corruption of the earth, and by dew, and other waies, (as I have ſaid to you:) and yet it is affirmed by ſome for a certain, that the *ſilver Eele* by generation, but not by Spawning as other Fiſh do, but that her Brood come alive from her, little live Eeles no bigger nor longer than a pin; and I have had too many teſtimonies of this to doubt the truth of it my ſelf, and if I thought it needful I might prove it, but I think it is needleſſe.

And this Eele of which I have ſaid ſo much to you, may be caught with divers kinds of Baits;

Baits; as namely with powdered Bief, with a *Lob* or *Garden-worm*, with a *Minnow*, or gut of a *Hen*, *Chicken*, or the guts of any Fish, or with almost any thing, for he is a greedie Fish; but the Eele may be caught especially with a little, a very little *Lamprey*, which some call a *Pride*, and may in the hot moneths be found many of them in the River *Thames*, and in many mud-heaps in other Rivers, yea, almost as usually as one finds worms in a dunghill.

Next note, that the Eele seldom stirs in the day; but then hides himself, and therefore he is usually caught by night with one of these baits of which I have spoken, and then caught by laying hooks, which you are to fasten to the bank or twigs of a tree; or by throwing a string crosse the stream with manie hooks at it, and baited with the aforesaid Baits, and a clod, or plummet, or stone, thrown into the River with this line, that so you may in the morning find it near to some fixt place, and then take it up with a Drag-hook or otherwise: but these things are indeed too common to be spoken of, and an hours fishing with any Angler will teach you better, both for these and many other common things in the practical part of *Angling*, than a weeks discourse. I shall therefore conclude this direction for taking the *Eele*, by telling you, that in a warm day in Summer I have taken many a good Eele by *snigling*, and

and have been much pleaſed with that ſport.

And becauſe you that are but a young Angler know not what *ſnigling* is, I will now teach it to you. You remember I told you that Eeles do not uſuallie ſtir in the day time, for then they hide themſelves under ſome covert, or under boards or plancks about Floud-gates, or Weires, or Mills, or in holes in the River banks; and you obſerving your time in a warm day, when the water is loweſt, may take a ſtrong ſmall hook tied to a ſtrong line, or to a ſtring about a Yard long, and then into one of theſe holes, or between any boards about a Mill, or under any great ſtone or planck, or any place where you think an Eele may hide or ſhelter her ſelf, there with the help of a ſhort ſtick put in your Bait, but leaſurely, and as far as you may conveniently; and it is ſcarce to be doubted, but that if there be an Eele within the ſight of it, the Eele will bite inſtantly, and as certainly gorge it: and you need not doubt to have him if you pull him not out of the hole too quickly, but pull him out by degrees, for he lying folded double in his hole, will with the help of his tail break all, unleſſe you give him time to be wearied with pulling; and ſo get him out by degrees, not pulling too hard.

And to commute for your great patience, I shall next tell you how to make this Eele

a most excellent dish of meat:

First, wash him in water and salt, then pull off his skin below his vent or navel, and not much further: having done that, take out his guts as cleam as you can, but wash him not: then give him three or four scorches with a knife, and then put into his belly and those scotches sweet herbs, an Anchovy, and a little Nutmeg grated or cut very small, and your herbs and Anchovis must also be cut very small, and mixt with good butter and salt: having done this, then pull his skin over him all but his head, which you are to cut off, to the end you may tye his skin about that part where his head grew, and it must be so tyed as to keep all his moisture within his skin: and having done this, tye him with Tape or Pack-thred to a Spit, and roste him leasurely, and baste him with water and salt till his skin breaks, and then with butter: and having

roste

roſted him enough, let what was put into his belly, and what he drips be his ſawce.

S. F.

But now let me tell you, that though the Eele thus dreſt be not only excellent good, but more harmleſſe then any other way, yet it is certain, that Phyſicians account the Eele dangerous meat; I will adviſe you therefore, as *Solomon* ſaies of Hony, Prov. 25. *Haſt thou found it, eat no more then is ſufficient, leſt thou ſurfeit; for it is not good to eat much honey.* And let me add this that the uncharitable *Italian* bids us, *Give Eels, and no wine to our enemies.*

And I will beg a little more of your attention to tell you that *Aldrovandus* and divers Phyſitians commend the Eele very much for medicine though not for meat. But let me tell you one obſervation, That the Eele is never out of ſeaſon, as *Trouts* and moſt other fiſh are at ſet times, at leaſt moſt Eeles are not.

I might here ſpeak of many other Fiſh whoſe ſhape and nature are much like the Eele, and frequent both the *Sea* and freſh Rivers; as namely the *Lamprel*, the *Lamprey* and the *Lamperne*; as alſo of the mightie *Congre*, taken often in *Severne*, about *Gloceſter*, and in what high eſteem manie of them are for the curioſitie of their taſte; but theſe are not ſo proper to be talk'd of by me, becauſe they make us Anglers no

no ſport, therefore I will let them alone as the Jewes do, to whom they are forbidden by their Law.

And Scholer, there is alſo a Flounder, a Sea-fiſh, which will wander very far into freſh Rivers, and there loſe himſelf, and dwell and thrive to a hands breadth, and almoſt twice ſo long, a Fiſh without ſcales, and moſt excellent meat, and a Fiſh that affords much ſport to the Angler, with any ſmall worm, but eſpecially a little blewiſh worm, gotten out of Marſh ground or Meadowes, which ſhould be well ſcowred; but this though it be moſt excellent meat, yet it wants ſcales, and is as I told you therefore an abomination to the Jewes.

But Scholer, there is a fiſh that they in *Lancaſhire* boaſt very much of, called a *Char*, taken there, (and I think there only,) in a Mere called, *Winander Mere*; a Mere, ſaies *Campden*, that is the largeſt in this Nation, being ten miles in length, & as ſmooth in the bottom as if it were paved with polliſht marble: this fiſh never exceeds fifteen or ſixteen inches in length; and 'tis ſpotted like a *Trout*, and has ſcarce a bone but on the back: but this, though I do not know whether it make the Angler ſport, yet I would have you take notice of it, becauſe it is a raritie, & of ſo high eſteem with perſons of great note.

Nor would I have you ignorant of a rare fiſh, called a *Guiniad*, of which I ſhall tell you what

Campden

Campden, and others ſpeak. The River *Dee* (which runs by *Cheſter*,) ſprings in *Merionnith-ſhire*, and as it runs toward *Cheſter*, it runs through *Pemble-Mere*, which is a large water: And it is obſerved, that though the river *Dee* abounds with *Salmon*, and *Pemble-Mere* with the *Guiniad*, yet there is never any *Salmon* caught in the *Mere*, nor a *Guiniad* in the River. And now my next obſervation ſhall be of the *Barbel*.

CHAP. XIV.

Obſervations of the Barbel, *and directions how to fiſh for him.*

Piſc. THE *Barbel* is ſo called (ſaies *Geſner*) by reaſon of his Barb or Wattels at his mouth, which is under his noſe or chaps. He is one of thoſe leather-mouthed Fiſh that I told you of, that verie ſeldom break his hold if he be once hook'd: but he will often break both rod and line if he proves to be a big one.

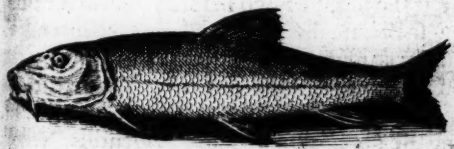
But the *Barbel*, though he be of a fine ſhape, and looks big, yet is not accounted the beſt fiſh to eat, neither for his wholſomneſs nor his taſte: But the Male is reputed much better then the Female, whoſe Spawn is verie hurtful, as I will preſently declare to you.

They flock together like ſheep, and are at worſt in *April*, about which time they ſpawn, but quickly grow to be in ſeaſon. He is able to live in the ſtrongeſt ſwifts of the Water, and in Summer love the ſhalloweſt and ſharpeſt ſtreams; and loves to lurk under weeds, and to feed on gravel againſt a riſing ground, and will root and dig in the ſands with his noſe like a hog, and there neſts himſelf: yet ſometimes he retires to deep and ſwift Bridges, or Floud-gates, or Weires, where he will neſt himſelf amongſt piles, or in hollow places, and take ſuch hold of moſſe or weeds, that be the water never ſo ſwift, it is not able to force him from the place that he contends for. This is his conſtant cuſtome in Summer, when he and moſt living creatures ſport themſelves in the Sun, but at the approach of Winter, then he forſakes the ſwift ſtreams and ſhallow waters, and by degrees retires to thoſe parts of the River that are quiet and deeper; in which places (and I think about that time) he Spawnes, and as I have formerly told you, with the help of the Melter, hides his Spawn or eggs in holes, which they both dig in the gravel, and then they mutually labour to cover it with the ſame ſand, to prevent it from being devoured by other fiſh.

There be ſuch ſtore of this fiſh in the River *Danubie*, that *Randelitius* ſaies, they may in ſome places of it, and in ſome moneths of the year, be

be taken by those that dwell near to the River, withtheir hands, eight or ten load at a time; he saies, they begin to be good in *May*, and that they cease to be so in *August*, but it is found to be otherwise in this Nation: but thus far we agree with him, that the Spawn of a *Barbell*, if it be not poison as he saies, yet that it is dangerous meat, and especially in the moneth of *May*; which is so certain that *Gesner* and *Gasius* declare, it had an ill effect upon them even to the indangering of their lives.

This fish is of a fine cast and handsome shape, small scales, and plac'd after a most exact and curious manner,



and, as I told you, may be rather said not to be ill, then to be good meat; the *Chub* and he have (I think) both lost a part of their credit by ill cookery, they being reputed the worst or coursest of fresh-water-fish: but the *Barbel* affords

an *Angler* choice ſport, being a luſtie and a cunning Fiſh; ſo luſtie and cunning as to endanger the breaking of the Anglers line, by running his head forcibly towards any covert, or hole, or bank: and then ſtriking at the line, to break it off with his tail (as is obſerved by *Plutárk*, in his Book *De induſtria animalium*) and alſo ſo cunning to nibble and ſuck off your worm cloſe to the hook, and yet avoid the letting the hook come into his mouth.

The *Barbel* is alſo curious for his baits, that is to ſay, that they be clean and ſweet; that is to ſay, to have your worms well ſcowred, and not kept in ſowre and muſtie moſſe, for he is a curious feeder, for at a well-ſcowred Lob-worm, he will bite as boldly as at any bait, and ſpecially, if the night or two before you Fiſh for him, you ſhall bait the places where you intend to Fiſh for him with big worms cut into pieces: and note, that none did ever over-bait the place, nor Fiſh too early or too late for a *Barbel*. And the *Barbel* will bite alſo at Gentles, which (not being too much ſcowred, but green) are a choice bait for him: and ſo is cheeſe, which is not to be too hard, but kept a day or two in a wet linnen cloth to make it tough; with this you may alſo bait the water a day or two before you Fiſh for the *Barbel*, and be much the likelier to catch ſtore, and if the cheeſe were laid in clarified honey a ſhort time before (as namely,

an

an hour or two) you were ſtill the likelier to catch Fiſh: ſome have directed to cut the cheeſe into thin pieces, and toaſte it, and then tie it on the hook with fine ſilk: and ſome adviſe to Fiſh for the *Barbel* with Sheeps tallow and ſoft cheeſe beaten or work'd into a Paſte, and that it is choicely good in *Auguſt*, and I believe it: but doubtleſſe the Lob-worm well ſcowred, and the Gentle not too much ſcowred, and cheeſe ordered as I have directed, are baits enough, and I think will ſerve in any moneth; though I ſhall commend any Angler that tries concluſions, and is induſtrious to improve the Art. And now, my honeſt Scholer, the long ſhowre, and my tedious Diſcourſe are both ended together: And I ſhall give you but this Obſervation, that when you fiſh for a *Barbell*, your Rod and Line be both long, and of good ſtrength, for (as I told you) you will find him a heavie and a dogged Fiſh to be dealt withall, yet he ſeldom or never breaks his hold if he be once ſtrucken. And if you would know more of fiſhing for the *Umber* or *Barbel*, get into favour with Doctor *Sheldon*, whoſe skill is above others; and of that the poor that dwell about him have a comfortable experience.

And now lets go and ſee what intereſt the *Trouts* will pay us for letting our *Angle-rods* lie ſo long, and ſo quietly in the water for their uſe. Come, Scholer, which will you take up?

Ven.

Ven. Which you think fit, Master.

Pisc. Why, you shall take up that; for I am certain by viewing the Line, it has a Fish at it. Look you, Scholer: well done. Come now, take up the other too; well, now you may tell my brother *Peter* at night, that you have caught a lease of *Trouts* this day. And now lets move toward our lodging, and drink a draught of *Red-Cowes Milk*, as we go, and give pretty *Maudlin* and her honest mother a brace of *Trouts* for their supper.

Venat. Master, I like your motion very well, and I think it is now about milking time, and yonder they be at it.

Pisc. God speed you, good woman, I thank you both for our Songs last night; I and my companion have had such fortune a Fishing this day, that we resolve to give you and *Maudlin* a brace of *Trouts* for supper, and we will now taste a draught of your *Red-Cowes milk*.

Milkw. Marrie, and that you shall with all my heart, and I will be still your debtor when you come this way; if you will but speak the word, I will make you a good *Sillabub*, of new Verjuice, and then you may sit down in a *hay-cock* and eat it, and *Maudlin* shall sit by and sing you the good old Song of the *Hunting in Chevy Chase*, or some other good Ballad, for she hath good store of them: *Maudlin* my honest *Maudlin* hath a notable memory, and she thikns

thinks nothing too good for you, becauſe you be ſuch honeſt men.

Venat. We thank you, and intend once in a moneth to call upon you again, and give you a little warning, and ſo good night; good night *Maudlin*. And now, good Maſter, lets loſe no time; but tell me ſomewhat more of Fiſhing, and if you pleaſe, firſt ſometing of Fiſhing for a *Gudgion*.

Piſc. I will, honeſt Scholer.

CHAP. XV.

Obſervations of the Gudgion, *the* Ruffe *and the* Bleak, *and how to fiſh for them.*

THe *Gudgion* is reputed a Fiſh of excellent taſte, and to be very wholſome: he is of a fine ſhape, of a ſilver colour, and beautified with black ſpots both on his body and tail. He breeds two or three times in the year, and alwaies in Summer. He is commended for a Fiſh of excellent nouriſhment: the *Germanes* call him *Groundling*, by reaſon of his feeding on the ground; and he there feaſts himſelf in ſharp ſtreams, and on the gravel, He and the *Barbel* both feed ſo, and do not hunt for flies at any time, as moſt other Fiſhes do: he is an excellent fiſh to enter a young

young Angler, being eaſie to be taken with a ſmall red worm, on or very near to the ground. He is one of thoſe leather-mouthed fiſh that has his teeth in his throat, and will hardly be loſt off from the hook if he be once ſtrucken: they be uſually ſcattered up and down every River in the ſhallowes, in the heat of Summer; but in *Autumne*, when the weeds begin to grow ſowre or rot, and the weather colder, then they gather together, and get into the deeper parts of the water; and are to be Fiſhed for there, with your hook alwaies touching the ground, if you Fiſh for him with a flote, or with a cork: But many will Fiſh for the *Gudgion* by hand, with a running line upon the ground, without a cork, as a *Trout* is Fiſhed for, and it is an excellent way, if you have a gentle rod and as gentle a hand.

There is alſo another Fiſh called a *Pope*, and by ſome a *Ruffe*, a Fiſh that is not known to be in ſome Rivers; it is much like the Pearch for his ſhape, and taken to be better then the Pearch, but will not grow to be bigger then a Gudgion: he is an excellent Fiſh, no Fiſh that ſwims is of a pleaſanter taſte, and he is alſo excellent to enter a young *Angler*, for he is a greedy biter, and they will uſually lie abundance of them together in one reſerved place where the water is deep, and runs quietly, and an eaſie Angler, if he has found where they lie, may catch

catch forty or fifty, or ſometimes twice ſo many at a ſtanding.

You muſt Fiſh for him with a ſmall red-worm, and if you bait the ground with earth it is excellent.

There is alſo a *Bleak*, or freſh-water-Sprat, a Fiſh that is ever in motion, and therefore called by ſome the *River-Swallow*; for juſt as you ſhall obſerve the *Swallow* to be moſt evenings in Summer ever in motion, making ſhort and quick turnes when he flies to catch Flies in the aire, (by which he lives,) ſo does the *Bleak* at the top of the water. *Auſonius* would have him called Bleak from his whitiſh colour: his back is of a pleaſent ſad or Sea-water-green, his belly white and ſhining as the Mountains ſnow; and doubtleſſe though he have the fortune (which vertue has in poor people,) to be neglected, yet the *Bleak* ought to be much valued, though we want *Allamot* ſalt, and the skill that the *Italians* have to turn them into Anchovis. This fiſh may be caught with a *Pater-noſter* line, that is, ſix or eight very ſmall hooks tyed along the line one half foot above the other: I have ſeen five caught thus at one time, and the bait has been Gentles, then which none is better.

Or this Fiſh may be caught with a fine ſmall artificial flie, which is to be a very ſad brown colour, and very ſmall, and the hook anſwerable. There is no better ſport than whipping for

for *Bleaks* in a boat or on a banck in the swift water in a Summers evening, with a Hazle top about five or six foot long, and a line twice the length of the Rod. I have heard Sir *Henry Wotton* say, that there be many that in *Italy* will catch *Swallows* so, or especially *Martins*, (the *Bird-angler* standing on the top of a Steeple to do it, and with a line twice so long as I have spoken of:) And let me tell you, Scholer, that both *Martins* and *Bleaks* be most excellent meat.

And let me tel you, that I have known a Hern that did constantly frequent one place, caught with a hook baited with a big Minnow or a small Gudgeon. The line and hook must be strong, and tied to some loose staff so big as she cannot flie away with it, a line not exceeding two Yards.

CHAP. XVI.

Is of nothing, or that which is nothing worth.

MY purpose was to give you some direction concerning *Roach* and *Dace*, and some other inferiour Fish, which make the Angler excellent sport, for you know there is more pleasure in hunting the Hare than in eating her: but I will forbear at this time to say any more, because you see yonder

der comes our brother *Peter* and honeſt *Coridon*; but I will promiſe you, that as you and I fiſh and walk to morrow towards *London*, if I have now forgotten any thing that I can then remember, I will not keep it from you.

Well met, Gentlmen, this is lucky that we meet ſo juſt together at this very door. Come Hoſteſs, where are you? is Supper ready? come, firſt give us drink, and be as quick as you can, for I believe we are all very hungrie. Well, brother *Peter* and *Coridon*, to you both; come drink, and tell me *what luck of fiſh*: we two have caught but ten Trouts, of which my Scholer caught three; look here's eight, and a brace we gave away: we have had a moſt pleaſant day for fiſhing and talking, and are returned home both wearie and hungrie, and now meat and reſt will be pleaſant.

Pet. And *Coridon* and I have not had an unpleaſant day, and yet I have caught but five Trouts; for indeed we went to a good honeſt Ale-houſe, and there we plaid at Shovel-board half the day; all the time that it rained we were there, and as merrie as they that fiſhed, and I am glad we are now with a drie houſe over our heads, for hark how it rains and blows. Come Hoſteſs, give us more Ale, and our ſupper with what haſte you may; and when we have ſup'd let us have your Song, *Piſcator*, and the Ketch that your Scholer promiſed us, or elſe *Coridon* will be dogged.

Piſc.

Pisc. Nay, I will not be worse than my word, you shall not want my Song, and I hope I shall be perfect in it.

Venat. And I hope the like for my Ketch which I have readie too, and therefore lets go merrily to supper, and then have a gentle touch at singing and drinking; but the last with moderation.

Cor. Come, now for your Song, for we have fed heartily. Come Hostess, lay a few more sticks on the fire, and now sing when you will.

Pisc. Well then, here's to you *Coridon*, and now for my Song.

Oh the gallant Fishers life,
It is the best of any,
'Tis full of pleasure, void of strife;
And 'tis belov'd of many:
Other joyes
are but toyes,
onely this
lawful is,
for our skill
breeds no ill,
but content and pleasure.

In a morning up we rise
Ere Aurora's *peeping,*
Drink a cup to wash our eyes,
Leave the sluggard sleeping:

Then

Then we go
to and fro,
with our knacks
at our backs,
to such streams
as the Thames,
if we have the leasure.

When we please to walk abroad
For our recreation,
In the fields is our abode,
Full of delectation:
Where in a brook
with a hook,
or a Lake,
fish we take;
there we sit,
for a bit,
till we fish intangle.

We have Gentles in a horn,
We have paste and worms too,
We can watch both night and morn,
Suffer rain and storms too:
None do here
use to swear,
oaths do fray
fish away,
we sit still,
watch our quill;
Fishers must not wrangle.

If the Suns exceſſive heat
Make our bodies ſwelter,
To an Oſier *hedge we get*
For a friendly ſhelter,
Where in a dike
Pearch *or* Pike,
Roch *or* Dace
we do chaſe,
Bleak *or* Gudgion
without grudging,
we are ſtill contended.

Or we ſometimes paſſe an hour
Under a green Willow,
That defends us from a ſhowre,
Making earth our pillow,
There we may
think and pray
before death
ſtops our breath:
other joyes
are but toyes,
and to be lamented.

Jo. Chalkhill.

Venat. Well ſung, Maſter, this daies fortune and pleaſure, and this nights company and ſong, do all make me more and more in love with *angling*. Gentlemen, my Maſter left me alone for an hour this day, and I verily believe he retired himſelf from talking with me, that he might be

be ſo perfect in this ſong: was it not Maſter?

Piſc. Yes indeed, for it is many Years ſince I learn'd it, and having forgotten a part of it, I was forced to patch it up by the help of mine own Invention, who am not excellent at Poetrie, as my part of the ſong may teſtifie: But of that I will ſay no more, leſt you ſhould think I mean by diſcommending it to beg your commendations of it. And therefore without replications lets hear your Ketch, Scholer, which I hope will be a good one, for you are both Muſical, and have a good fancie to boot.

Venat. Marry and that you ſhall, and as freely as I would have my honeſt Maſter tell me ſome more ſecrets of Fiſh and Fiſhing as we walk and fiſh towards *London* to morrow. But Maſter, firſt let me tell you, that that very hour which you were abſent from me, I ſate down under a *Willow-tree* by the water ſide, and conſidered what you had told me of the Owner of that pleaſant Meadow in which you then left me; that he had a plentiful eſtate, and not a heart to think ſo; that he had at this time many Law-ſutes depending, and that they both damp'd his mirth, and took up ſo much of his time and thoughts, that he himſelf had not leiſure to take the ſweet content that I (who pretended no title to them,) took in his fields; for I could there ſit quietly, and looking on the water, ſee ſome Fiſhes ſport themſelves in the

ſilver ſtreams, others leaping at Flyes of ſeverall ſhapes and colours; looking on the Hils, could behold them ſpotted with Woods and Groves; looking down the Medows, could ſee here a Boy gathering *Lillies* and *Lady-ſmocks*, and there a Girle cropping *Culverkeyes* and *Cowſlips*, all to make Garlands ſutable to this pleaſant Month of *May*: theſe and many other Field-flowers, ſo perfumed the aire, that I thought that very Meadow like the Field in *Sicily* (of which *Diodorus* ſpeaks) where the perfumes ariſing from the place, makes all dogs that hunt in it, to fall off, and to loſe their hotteſt ſent. I ſay, as I thus ſate joying in mine owne happy condition, and pitying this poor rich man, that ought this, and many other pleaſant Groves and Meadows about me, I did thankfully remember what my Saviour ſaid, that *the meek poſſeſs the earth*; or rather, they injoy what the other poſſeſs and injoy not, for Anglers and meek quiet-ſpirited-men, are free from thoſe high, thoſe reſtleſſe thoughts which corrode the ſweets of life; and they, and they onely can ſay as the Poet has pappily expreſt it:

Hail bleſt eſtate of lowlineſſe!
Happy enjoyment of ſuch minds,
As rich in ſelf-contentedneſſe,
Can, like the reeds in roughеſt winds,
By yielding make that blow but ſmal
At which proud Oaks and Cedars fal.

There

There came also into my mind at that time, certain Verses in praise of a mean estate, and an humble mind, they were written by *Phineas Fletcher*: an excellent Divine, and an excellent Angler, and the Author of excellent Piscatory Eglogues, in which you shall see the picture of this good mans mind.

No empty hopes, no Courtly fears him fright,
No begging wants, his middle fortune bite,
But sweet content *exiles both* misery *and* spite.

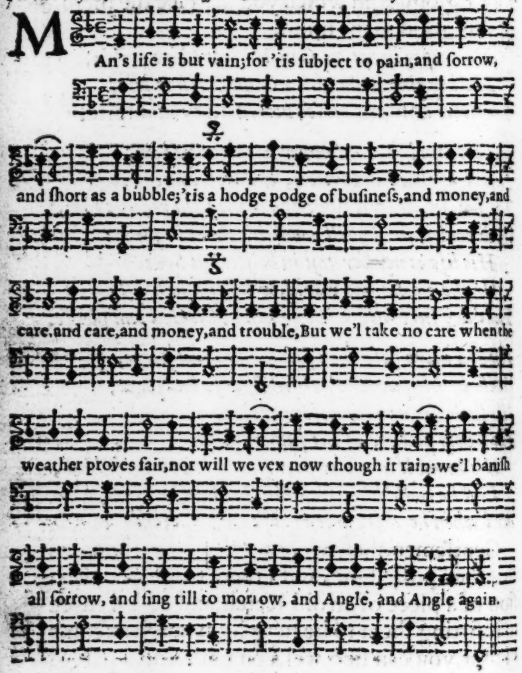
His certain life, that never can deceive him,
Is full of thousand sweets, and rich content:
The smooth-leav'd Beeches *in the field receive him,*
With coolest shade, till noon-tides heat be spent:
His life is neither tost in boisterous Seas,
Or the vexatious world, or lost in slothfull ease;
Pleas'd & full blest he lives, when he his God can please.

His bed more safe then soft yields quiet sleeps,
While by his side his faithful Spouse has place,
His little son into his bosom creeps,
The lively picture of his fathers face.
His humble house, or poor state ne're torment him,
Less he could like, if less his God had lent him, (*him.*
And when he dies, green turfs do for a tomb content

Gentlemen, these were a part of the thoughts that then possest me, and I there made a conversion of a piece of an old Ketch, and added more to it, fitting them to be sung by us anglers: come Master, you can sing wel, you must sing a part of it as it is in this paper.

The ANGLERS Song.

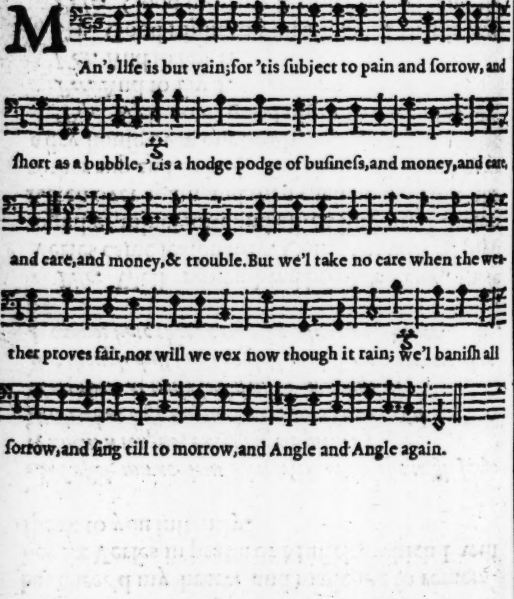
For two Voyces, Treble and Basse. CANTUS. Set by Mr. *Henry Lawes.*



The ANGLERS Song.

BASSVS.

For two Voyces. Set by Mr. *Henry Lawes.*



Pet. I marrie Sir, this is Musick indeed, this has cheer'd my heart, and made me to remember six Verses in praise of Musick, which I will speak to you instantly.

Musick miraculous Rhetorick, that speak'st sense
Without a tongue, excelling eloquence;
With what ease might thy errours be excus'd
Wert thou as truly lov'd as th' art abus'd?
But though dull souls neglect, and some reprove thee,
I cannot hate thee, cause the Angels love thee.

Pisc. Well remembred brother *Peter*, these Verses came seasonably. Come, we will all joyn together, mine Hoste and all, & sing my Scholers Ketch over again, and then each man drink the tother cup and to bed, and thank God we have a dry house over our heads.

Pisc. Well now, good night to every body.

Pet. And so say I.

Ven. And so say I.

Cor. Good night to you all, and I thank you.

Pisc. Good morrow brother *Peter*, and the like to you honest *Coridon*: come, my Hostis saies there is seven shillings to pay, lets each man drink a pot for his mornings draught, and lay down his two shillings, that so my Hostis may not have occasion to repent her self of being so diligent, and using us so kindly.

Pet. The motion is liked by every body, and so

ſo Hoſtis, here's your money, we Anglers are all beholding to you, it will not be long ere Ile ſee you again. And now brother *Piſcator* I wiſh you and my brother your Scholer a faire day, and good fortune. Come *Coridon*, this is our way.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Roch *and* Dace, *and how to fiſh for them. And of* Cadis.

Ven. GOod Maſter, as we go now towards *London*, be ſtill ſo courteous as to give me more inſtructions, for I have ſeverall boxes in my memory in which I will keep them all very ſafe, there ſhall not one of them be loſt.

Piſc. Well Scholer, that I will, and I will hide nothing from you that I can remember, and may help you forward towards a perfection in this Art, and becauſe we have ſo much time, and I have ſaid ſo little of *Roch* and *Dace*, I will give you ſome directions concerning them.

Some ſay the *Roch* is ſo called, from *Rutilus*, which they ſay, ſignifies red fins: He is a Fiſh of no great reputation for his dainty taſte, and his Spawn is accounted much better then any other

other part of him. And you may take notice, that as the *Carp* is accounted the *Water-Fox*, for his cunning, so the *Roch* is accounted the *Water-sheep* for his simplicity or foolishnesse. It is noted that the *Roch* and *Dace* recover strength, and grow in season in a fortnight after spawning, the *Barbel* and *Chub* in a moneth, the *Trout* in four moneths, and the *Salmon* in the like time, if he gets into the Sea, and after into fresh-water.

Roches be accounted much better in the River then in a pond, though ponds usually breed the biggest. But there is a kind of bastard small *Roch* that breeds in Ponds with a very forked tail, and of a very small size, which some say is bred by the *Bream* and right *Roch*, and some Ponds are stored with these beyond belief; and knowing-men know their difference and call them *Ruds*; they differ from the true *Roch* as much as a Herring from a Pilchard, and these bastard breed of *Roch* are now scattered in many Rivers, but I think not in *Thames*, which I believe affords the largest and fattest in this Nation, especially below *London-Bridg*: the *Roch* is a leather-mouth'd Fish, and has a kind of saw-like teeth in his throat. And lastly let me tell you, the *Roch* makes an Angler excellent sport, especially the great Roches about *London*, where I think there be the best Roch-Anglers, and I think that the best *Trout-Anglers* be in *Derby-shire*.

Next

Next let me tel you, you ſhall fiſh for this *roch* in Winter with Paſte or Gentles, in *April* with worms or Cadis; in the very hot moneths with little white ſnailes, or with flies under-water, for he ſeldom takes them at the top, though the Dace will. In many of the hot moneths, Roches may alſo be caught thus: Take a *May-fly* or *Ant-fly*, ſink him with a little lead to the bottom near to the piles or poſts of a Bridg, or near to any poſts of a *Weire*, I mean any deep place where Roches lie quietly, and then pull your flie up very leiſurely, and uſually a Roch will follow your bait to the very top of the water and gaze on it there, and run at it and take it leſt the flie ſhould flie away from him.

I have ſeen this done at *Windſor* and *Henly-Bridg*, and great ſtore of *Roch* taken, and ſometimes a *Dace* or *Chub*; and in *Auguſt* you may Fiſh for them with a Paſte made onely of the crumbs of bread, which ſhould be of pure fine Manchet; and that muſt be ſo tempered betwixt your hands till it be both ſoft and tough too; a very little water, and time, and labour, and clean hands will make it a moſt excellent paſte: But when you Fiſh with it, you muſt have a ſmall hook, a quick eye, and a nimble hand, or the bait is loſt and the fiſh too; (if one may loſe that which they never had) with this paſte, you may, as I ſaid, take both the Roch and the Dace or Dare, for they be much of a kind,

in

in matter of feeding, cunning, goodneſſe and uſually in ſize. And therefore take this generall direction for ſome other baits which may concern you to take notice of. They will bite almoſt at any fly, but eſpecially at Ant-flies; concerning which, take this direction, for it is very good.

Take the blackiſh *Ant-flye* out of the Mole-hill or Ant-hill, in which place you ſhall find them in the Moneth of *June*, or if that be too early in the year, then doubtleſs you may find them in *July*, *Auguſt*, and moſt of *September*, gather them alive with both their wings, and then put them into a glaſſe, that will hold a quart or a pottle; but firſt, put into the glaſſe a handful or more of the moiſt earth out of which you gather them, and as much of the roots of the graſs of the ſaid hillock, and then put in the flies gently, that they loſe not their wings, lay a clod of earth over it, and then ſo many as are put into the glaſſe without bruiſing, will live there a moneth or more, and be alwaies in a readineſſe for you to Fiſh with; but if you would have them keep longer, then get any great earthen pot, or barrel of three or four gallons (which is better) then waſh your barrel with water and honey; and having put into it a quantity of earth and graſſe roots, then put in your flies, and cover it, and they will live a quarter of a year; theſe in any ſtream and clear water, are a deadly bait for

Roch

Roch or *Dace*, or for a *Chub*, and your rule is, to Fiſh not leſſe then a handful from the bottom.

I ſhall next tell you a winter bait for a *Roch*, a *Dace* or *Chub*, and it is choicely good. About *All-hollantide* (and ſo till Froſt comes) when you ſee men ploughing up heath-ground, or ſandy ground, or greenſwards, then follow the plough, and you ſhall find a white worme as big as two Magots, and it hath a red head, (you may obſerve in what ground moſt are, for there the Crowes will be very watchfull, and follow the Plough very cloſe) it is all ſoft, and full of whitiſh guts; a worme that is in *Norfolk*, and ſome other Countries called a *Grub*, and is bred of the ſpawne or eggs of a Beetle, which ſhe leaves in holes that ſhe digs in the ground under Cow or Horſe-dung, and there reſts all Winter, and in *March* or *April* comes to be firſt a red, and then a black Beetle: gather a thouſand or two of theſe, and put them with a peck or two of their own earth into ſome tub or firkin, and cover and keep them ſo warme, that the froſt or cold aire, or winds kill them not, and you may keep them all winter, and kill fiſh with them at any time: and if you put ſome of them into a little earth and honey a day before you uſe them, you will find them an excellent baite for *Bream* or *Carp*.

And after this manner you may alſo keep Gen-

Gentles all winter, which is a good baite then, and much the better for being lively and tough: or you may breed and keep Gentles thus: Take a piece of Beasts liver, and with a cross stick, hang it in some corner over a pot or barrel half full of dry clay, and as the Gentles grow big, they will fall into the barrel and scowre themselves, and be alwaies ready for use whensoever you incline to Fish; and these gentles may be thus made til after *Michaelmas*. But if you desire to keep Gentles to Fish with all the year, then get a dead Cat or a Kite and let it be fly-blown, and when the Gentles begin to be alive and to stir, then bury it and them in moist earth, but as free from frost as you can, and these you may dig up at any time when you intend to use them; these will last till *March*, and about that time turn to be flies.

But if you be nice to foul your Fingers, (which good Anglers seldom are) then take this Bait: Get a handful of well-made Mault, and put it into a dish of water, and then wash and rub it betwixt your hands till you make it clean, and as free from husks as you can; then put that water from it, and put a small quantitie of fresh water to it, and set it in something that is fit for that purpose over the Fire, where it is not to boil apace, but leasurely and very softly, untill it become somewhat soft, which you may trie by feeling it betwixt your Finger and

and Thumb, and when it is ſoft, then put your water from it, and then take a ſharp Knife, and turning the ſprout end of the corne upward, with the point of your Knife take the back part of the huſk off from it, and yet leaving a kind of inward huſk on the corn, or elſe it is marr'd, and then cut off that ſprouted end, (I mean a little of it)that the white may appear,and ſo pul off the huſk on the cloven ſide (as I directed you) and then cutting off a very little of the other end, that ſo your hook may enter, and if your hook be ſmall and good, you will find this to be a very choice Bait either for Winter or Summer, you ſometimes caſting a little of it into the place where your flote ſwims.

And to take the *Roch* and *Dace*, a good Bait is the young brood of Waſps or Bees, if you dip their heads in bloud; eſpecially good for *Bream*, if they be baked or hardned in their huſks in an Oven, after the bread is taken out of it, or on a Fire-ſhovel; and ſo alſo is the thick bloud of *Sheep*, being half dried on a Trencher, that you may cut it into ſuch pieces as may beſt fit the ſize of your hook, and a little ſalt keeps it from growing black, and makes it not the worſe but better: This is taken to be a choice Bait if rightly ordered.

There be ſeveral Oiles of a ſtrong ſmell that I have been told of, and to be excellent to tempt Fiſh to bite, of which I could ſay much,

but I remember I once carried a ſmall Bottle from Sir *George Haſtings* to Sir *Henry Wotton*, (they were both chimical men) as a great Preſent, it was ſent, and receiv'd, and us'd with great confidence; and yet upon inquirie I found it did not anſwer the expectation of Sir *Henry*, which with the help of this and other circumſtances, makes me have little belief in ſuch things as many men talk of: not but that I think Fiſhes both ſmell and hear, (as I have expreſt in my former diſcourſe) but there is a myſterious Knack, which (though it be much eaſier than the Philoſophers Stone, yet) is not attainable by common capacities, or elſe lies locked up in the brain or breſt of ſome chimical man, that like the *Roſi-crutians* will not yet reveal it. But I ſtepped by chance into this diſcourſe of Oiles and Fiſhes ſmelling, and though there might be more ſaid, both of it and of Baits for *Roach* and *Dace*, and other ſlote Fiſh, yet I will forbear it at this time, and tell you in the next place how you are to prepare your Tackling: concerning which I will for ſport ſake give you an old Rhime out of an old Fiſh-book, which will be a part of what you are to provide.

My Rod and my Line, my Flote and my Lead,
My Hook and my Plummet, my whetſtone and knife,
My Basket, my Baits both living and dead,

My

My Net and my Meat, for that is the chief:
Then I muſt have Thred, and Hairs green and ſmall,
With mine Angling purſe, and ſo you have all.

But you muſt have all theſe Tackling, and twice ſo many more, with which if you mean to be a Fiſher, you muſt ſtore your ſelf; and to that purpoſe I will go with you either to (*Charles Brandons* (near to the *Swan* in *Golding-lane*;) or to Mr. *Fletchers* in the Court which did once belong to Dr. *Nowel* the Dean of *Pauls*, he that I told you was a good man and a good Fiſher; it is hard by the Weſt end of St. *Pauls* Church. But if you will buy choice hooks, I will one day walk with you to *Charles Kerbyes* in *Harp-alley* in *Shooe-lane*, who is the moſt exact and beſt hook-maker the Nation affords. They be all three honeſt men, and will fit an Angler with what Tackling he wants.

I have heard, that the tackling hath been prized at fifty pounds in the Inventorie of an Angler.

Venat. Then, good Maſter, let it be at *Charls Brandons*, for he is neareſt to my dwelling, and I pray let's meet there the nineth of *May* next about two of the clock, and I'll want nothing that a Fiſher ſhould be furniſhed with.

Piſc. Well, and I'll not fail you God willing, at the time and place appointed.

Venat. I thank you, good Maſter, and I will not fail you: and, good Maſter, tell me what

Baits more you remember, for it will not now be long ere we shall be at *Tottenham high-Crosse*, and when we come thither I will make you some requital of your pains, by repeating as choice a copie of Verses, as any we have heard since we met together; and that is a proud word, for we have heard very good ones.

Pisc. Well, Scholer, and I shall be right glad to hear them; and I will tell you whatsoever comes in my mind, that I think may be worth your hearing. You may make another choice Bait thus, Take a handful or two of the best and biggest *Wheat* you can get, boil it in a little milk, (like as *Frumity* is boiled) boil it so till it be soft, and then frie it very leasurely with Honie and a little beaten Saffron dissolved in milk, and you will find this a choice Bait, and good I think for any Fish, especially for *Roch*, *Dace*, *Chub* or *Greyling*: I know not but that it may be as good for a River-*carp*, and especially if the ground be a little baited with it.

You are also to know, that there be divers kinds of *Cadis*, or *Case-worms*, that are to be found in this Nation in severall distinct Counties, and in severall little Brooks that relate to bigger Rivers, as namely, one *Cadis* called a *Piper*, whose husk or case is a piece of reed about an inch long or longer, and as big about as the compass of a twopence; these worms being kept three or four days in a woolen bag with sand

ſand at the bottom of it, and the bag wet once a day, will in three or four days turn to be yellow, and theſe be a choice bait for the *Chub* or *Chavender*, or indeed for any great Fiſh, for it is a large bait.

There is alſo a leſſer *Cadis-worm*, called a *Cock-ſpur*, being in faſhion like the ſpur of a Cock, ſharp at one end, and the caſe or houſe in which this dwells is made of ſmall husks and gravel, and ſlime, moſt curiouſly made of theſe, even ſo as to be wondered at, but not to be made by man no more then a *King-fiſhers* neſt can, which is made of little fiſhes bones, and have ſuch a Geometricall inter-weaving and connexion, as the like is not to be done by the art of man: This kind of Cadis is a choice bait for any flote-Fiſh, it is much leſs then the *Piper-Cadis*, and to be ſo ordered, and theſe may be ſo preſerved ten, fifteen, or twenty days, or it may be longer.

There is alſo another *Cadis* called by ſome a *Straw-worm*, and by ſome a *Ruffe-coat*, whoſe houſe or caſe is made of little pieces of bents, and ruſhes, and ſtrawes, and water-weeds, and I know not what, which are ſo knit together with condenſed ſlime, that they ſtick about her husk or caſe, not unlike the briſtles of a *Hedg-hog*; theſe three *Cadis* are commonly taken in the beginning of Summer, and are good indeed to take any kind of fiſh with flote or otherwiſe: I

might tell you of many more, which as these do early, so those have their time of turning to be flies later in Summer; but I might lose my self, and tire you by such a discourse, I shall therefore but remember you, that to know these, and their several kinds, and to what flies every particular *Cadis* turnes, and then how to use them first as they be *Cadis*, and then as they be *flyes* is an art, and an art that every one that professes to be an *Angler* has not leisure to search after, and if he had, is not capable of learning.

Ile tell you Scholer, severall Countries have severall kinds of *Cadisses*, that indeed differ as much as dogs do: That is to say, as much as a very *Cur* and a *Greyhound* do. These be usually bred in the very little rills or ditches that run into bigger rivers, and I think a more proper bait for those very Rivers, then any other. I know not how or of what this *Cadis* receives life, or what coloured flye it turnes to; but doubtlesse, they are the death of many Trouts, and this is one killing way.

Take one (or more if need be) of these large yellow *Cadis*, pull off his head, and with it pull out his black gut, put the body (as little bruised as is possible) on a very little hook, armed on with a Red haire (which will shew like the *Cadis-head*) and a very little thin lead, so put upon the shank of the hook that it may sink presently; throw this bait thus ordered (which will look

look very yellow) into a hole where a Trout is, and he will preſently venture his life for it, 'tis not to be doubted if you be not eſpyed; and that the bait firſt touch the water before the line, and this will do beſt in the ſtilleſt water.

Next let me tell you, I have been much pleaſed to walk quietly by a Brook with a little ſtick in my hand, with which I might eaſily take theſe, and conſider the curioſity of their compoſure; and if you ſhall ever like to do ſo, then note, that your ſtick muſt be cleft, or have a nick at one end of it, by which means you may with eaſe take many of them in that nick out of the water, before you have any occaſions to uſe them. Theſe, my honeſt Scholer, are ſome obſervations told to you as they now come ſuddenly into my memory, of which you may make ſome uſe: but for the practical part, it is that that makes an Angler: it is diligence, and obſervation, and practice, and an ambition to be the beſt in the Art that muſt do it. I will tell you Scholer, I once heard one ſay, *I envy not him that eats better* meat *then I do, nor him that is* richer, *or that wears better* cloathes *then I do. I envy no body but him, and him onely that catches more* fiſh *then I do.* And ſuch a man is like to prove an Angler, and this noble emulation I wiſh to you and all young Anglers.

CHAP. XVIII.

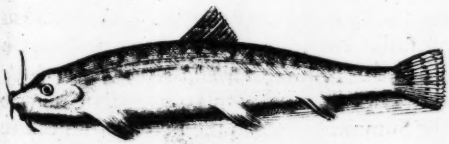
Of the Minnow *or* Penk, *of the* Loach, *and of the* Bull-head, *or* Millers-thumb.

Pisc. THere be also three or four other little fish that I had almost forgot, that are all without scales, and may for excellency of meat be compared to any fish of greatest value, and largest size. They be usually full of eggs or spawn all the moneths of Summer; for they breed often, as 'tis observed *mice* and many of the smaller four-footed Creatures of the earth do; and as those, so these come quickly to their full growth and perfection. And it is needfull that they breed both often and numerously, for they be (besides other accidents of ruine) both a prey, and baites for other fish. And first, I shall tell you of the *Minnow* or *Penk*.

The *Minnow* hath, when he is in perfect season, and not sick (which is onely presently after spawning) a kind of dapled or waved colour, like to a *Panther*, on his sides, inclining to a greenish and skie-color, his belly being milk-white, and his back almost black or blackish. He is a sharp biter at a small worm, and in hot weather makes excellent sport for young Anglers, or boyes, or women that love that Recreation,

creation, and in the ſpring they make of them excellent *Minnow-Tanſies*; for being waſhed well in ſalt, and their heads and tails cut off, and their guts taken out, they prove excellent for that uſe, being fryed with yolks of eggs, the flowers of *Cowſlips*, and of *Primroſes*, and a little *Tanſie*.

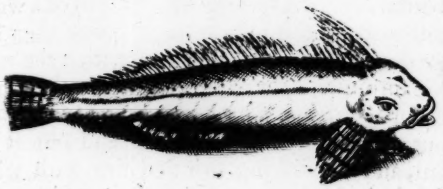
The Loach is, as I told you, a moſt dainty fiſh, he breeds and feeds in little and clear ſwift brooks or rills; and lives there upon the gravel, and in the ſharpeſt ſtreams: He growes not to be above a finger-long, and no thicker then is ſutable to that length. This *Loach*,



is of the ſhape of the Eele: he has a beard or wattels like a *Barbel*. He has two fins at his ſides, four at his belly and one at his tail; he is dapled with many black or brown ſpots, his mouth is Barbel-like under his noſe. This Fiſh is uſually full of eggs or ſpawn, and is by *Geſ-*

ner and other learned Physitians commended for great nourishment, and to be very grateful both to the palate and stomach of sick persons, and is to be fished for with a very small worm at the bottom, for he very seldom or never rises above the Gravel, on which I told you he usually gets his living.

The *Millers-thumb* or *Bull-head* is a Fish of no pleasing shape. He is by *Gesner* compared to the *Sea-toad-fish*, for his similitude and shape. It has a head big and flat, much greater than suitable to his Bodie; a mouth very wide and usually gaping. He is without teeth, but his lips are very rough, much like to a File. He hath two Fins near to his gills, which be roundish or crested, two Fins also under the Bellie, two on the Back, one below the Vent, and the Fin of his tail is round. Nature hath painted the Bodie of this Fish with *whitish*, *blackish*, *brownish* spots. They be usually full of egges or spawne all the Summer, (I mean the Females) and those eggs swell their Vents almost into the form of a dug. They begin to spawne about *April*, and (as I told you) spawn several moneths in the Summer; and in the Winter the Minnow, and Loach and Bul-head dwell in the mud as the Eele doth, or we know not where; no more than we know where the Cuckoe and Swallow, and other Summer-birds (which first appear to us in *April*) spend their cold winter melancholy moneths. This *Bulhead* does



does uſually dwell and hide himſelf in holes or amongſt ſtones in clear water; and in very hot daies will lie a very long time and very ſtill, and ſun himſelf, and will be eaſie to be ſeen upon any flat ſtone, or on any gravel, at which time he will ſuffer an Angler to put a hook baited with a ſmall worm very near unto his very mouth, and he never refuſes to bite, nor indeed to be caught with the worſt of Anglers. *Matthiolus* commends him much more for his taſte and nouriſhment, than for his ſhape or beautie.

There is alſo a little Fiſh called a *Sticklebag*; a Fiſh without ſcales, but hath his body fenc'd with ſeverall prickles. I know not where he dwels in winter, nor what he is good for in Summer, but only to make ſport for boyes and women-Anglers, and to feed other Fiſh that be Fiſh of prey, as Trouts in particular, who will bite

bite at him as at a Penk, and better, if your hook be rightly baited with him, for he may be so baited as his tail turning like the sail of a windmill will make him turne more quick then any *Penk* or *Minnow* can. For note, that the nimble turning of that or the *Minnow* is the perfection of *Minnow-fishing*. To which end, if you put your hook into his mouth, and out at his tail, and then having first tied him with white thred a little above his tail, and placed him after such a manner on your hook as he is like to turn, then sow up his mouth to your line, and he is like to turn quick, and tempt any *Trout*: but if he do not turn quick, then turn his tail a little more or lesse towards the inner part, or towards the side of the hook, or put the *Minnow* or *Sticklebag* a little more crooked or more straite on your hook, untill it will turne both true and fast; and then doubt not but to tempt any great *Trout* that lies in a swift stream. And the *Loach* that I told you of will do the like; no baite is more tempting, provided the *Loach* be not too big.

And now *Scholer*, with the help of this fine morning, and your patient attention, I have said all that my present memory will afford me concerning most of the severall Fish that are usually fisht for in fresh waters.

Venat. But Master, you have by your former civility made me hope that you will make good your promise, and say something of the severall

ſeveral Rivers that be of moſt note in this Nation; and alſo of *Fiſh-ponds*, and the ordering of them; and do it I pray good Maſter, for I love any Diſcourſe of Rivers, and Fiſh and fiſhing, the time ſpent in ſuch diſcourſe paſſes away very pleaſantly.

CHAP. XIX.

Of ſeveral Rivers, *and ſome obſervations of fiſh.*

Piſc. WELL Scholer, ſince the wayes and weather do both favor us, and that we yet ſee not *Tottenham Croſs*, you ſhall ſee my willingneſſe to ſatisfie your deſire. And firſt, for the Rivers of this Nation, there be (as you may note out of Doctor *Heylins* Geography and others) in number 325. but thoſe of chiefeſt note he reckons and deſcribes as followeth.

The chief is *Thamiſis*, compounded of two Rivers, *Thame* and *Iſis*; whereof the former riſing ſomewhat beyond *Thame* in *Buckinghamſhire*, and the latter in *Cyrenceſter* in *Gloceſterſhire* meet together about *Dorceſter* in *Oxfordſhire*, the iſſue of which happy conjunction is the *Thamiſis* or *Thames*. Hence it flyeth betwixt

twixt *Berks*, *Buckinghamshire*, *Middlesex*, *Surry*, *Kent* and *Essex*, and so weddeth himself to the Kentish *Medway* in the very jawes of the Ocean; this glorious River feeleth the violence and benefit of the Sea more then any River in *Europe*, ebbing and flowing twice a day, more then sixtie miles; about whose banks are so many fair Townes aud Princely Palaces that a *Germane Poet* thus truly spake:

Tot Campos, &c.

We saw so many Woods, *and Princely* bowers,
Sweet Fields, *brave* Palaces, *and* stately Towers,
So many Gardens *dreſt with curious care,*
That Thames *with* royal Tiber *may compare.*

2. The second River of note, is *Sabrina* or *Severn*: it hath its beginning in *Plinlimmon Hill* in *Montgomery-shire*, end his and seven miles from *Bristol*, washing in the mean space the walls of *Shrewsbury*, *Worcester* and *Gloceſter*, and divers other places and palaces of note.

3. *Trent* so called for thirty kind of Fishes that are found in it, or that it receiveth thirty lesser Rivers, who having his fountaine in *Staffordshire*, and gliding through the Countries of *Nottingham*, *Lincoln*, *Leiceſter* and *York*, augmenteth the turbulent current of *Humber*, the most violent stream of all the Isle. This *Humber* is

not

bot, to ſay truth, a diſtinct River, having a ſpring head of his own, but rather the mouth or *Eſtuarium* of divers Rivers here confluent and meeting together; namely, your *Dorwent*, and eſpecially of *Ouſe* and *Trent*; and (as the *Danow*, having received into its *channel*, the River *Dravus*, *Savus*, *Tibiſnus*, and divers others) changeth his name into this of *Humberabus*, as the old Geographers call it.

4. *Medway*, a Kentiſh River, famous for harbouring the royal Navy.

5. *Tweed*, on north eaſt bound of *England*, on whoſe northerne banks is ſeated the ſtrong and impregnable Town of *Barwick*.

6. *Tine*, famous for *Newcaſtle* and her inexhauſtible coal-pits. Theſe and the reſt of principal note are thus comprehended in one of Mr. *Draytons* Sonnets.

The flouds queen Thames *for ſhips and ſwans is*
And ſtately Severn for her ſhore is prais'd, (crownd
The Chriſtall Trent *for fords and fiſh renownd,*
And Avons *fame to* Albions *cliffs is rais'd,*
Carlegion Cheſter *vants her holy* Dee,
York *many wonders of her* Ouſe *can tell,*
The Peke *her* Dove, *whoſe banks ſo fertile be,*
And Kent *will ſay her* Medway *doth excell.*
Cotſwoll *commends her* Iſis *to the* Tame,
Our Northern borders boaſt of Tweeds *fair Flood,*
Our weſtern parts extoll their Willies *fame,*
And the old Lea brags of the Daniſh *blond.*

Theſe

These observations are out of learned Doctor *Heylin*, and my old deceased friend *Michael Draiton*; and because you say, you love such discourses as these of *fish* and *fishing*, I love you the better, and love the more to impart them to you; nevertheless, *Scholer*, if I should begin but to name the severall sorts of strange Fish that are usually taken in many of these rivers that run into the Sea, I might beget wonder in you, or unbelief, or both; and yet I will venture to tell you a reall truth concerning one lately dissected by Doctor *Wharton*, a man of great learning and experience, and of equall freedom to communicate it, one that loves me and my Art, one to whom I have been beholding for many of the choicest observations that I have imparted to you. This good man, that dares do any thing rather then tell an untruth, did (I say) tell me he lately dissected one, and he thus described it to me.

He was almost a yard broad, and twice that length; his mouth wide enough to receive or take into it the head of a man, his stomach seven or eight inches broad: he is of a slow motion, and usually lyes or lurks close in the mud, and has a moveable string on his head about a span, or near unto a quarter of a yard long, by the moving of which (which is his natural Bait) *when he lyes close and unseen in the mud, he draws other smaller fish close to him,*

and

and then ſucks them into his mouth and devours them.

And, Scholer, do not wonder at this, for beſides the credit of the Relator, you are to note, many of theſe, and Fiſhes which are of the like and more unuſual ſhapes, are very often taken on the mouths of our Sea-rivers, and on the Sea-ſhore; and this will be no wonder to any that have travelled *Egypt*, where 'tis known the famous River *Nilus* does not onely breed Fiſhes that yet want names, but the over-flowing of that River by the help of the Suns heat on that fat ſlime which that River leaves on the Banks, (when it falls back into its natural channel) ſtrange Beaſts are alſo bred, that no man can give a name to, as *Grotius* (in his *Sopham*) and others have obſerved.

But whither am I ſtraid in this diſcourſe? I will end it by telling you, that at the mouth of ſome of theſe Rivers of ours, Herrings are ſo plentiful, as namely near to *Yarmouth* in *Norfolk*, and in the weſt Countrie, Pilchers ſo very plentiful, as you will wonder to read what our learned *Cambden* relates of them in his *Britannia*, p. 178, 186.

Well, Scholer, I will ſtop here, and tell you what by reading and conference I have obſerved concerning Fiſh-ponds.

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

Of Fish-ponds, and how to order them.

DOctor *Lebault* the learned French man, in his large discourse of *Mason Rustique*, gives this direction for making of *Fish-ponds*, I shall refer you to him to read it at large, but I think I shall contract it, and yet make it as useful.

He adviseth, that when you have dreined the ground, and made the earth firme where the head of the Pond must be, that you must then in that place drive in two or three rows of Oak or Elme Piles, which should be scorcht in the Fire, or half burnt before they be driven into the earth, (for being thus used preserves them much longer from rotting) and having done so, lay fagots or Bavins of smaller wood betwixt them, and then earth betwixt and above them, and then having first very well rammed them and the earth, another pile used in like manner as the first were: and note that the second pile is to be of or about the height that you intend to make your Sluce or floud-gate, or the vent that you intend shall convey the overflowings of your Pond in any floud that shall endanger the breaking of the Pond dam.

Then he advises that you plant Willows or Owlers

Owlers about it, or caſt in Bavins in ſome places not far from the ſide, and in the moſt ſandy places for Fiſh both to ſpawn upon, and to defend them and the young Frie from the many Fiſh, and alſo from Vermin that lie at watch to deſtroy them, eſpecially the ſpawn of the *Carp* and *Tench*.

He and *Dubravius* and all others adviſe, that you make choice of ſuch a place for your Pond, that it may be refreſht with a little rill, or with rain water running or falling into it; by which Fiſh are more inclined both to breed, and are alſo refreſht and fed the better, and do prove to be of a much ſweeter and more pleaſant taſte.

To which end it is obſerved, that ſuch Pools as be large and have moſt gravel, and ſhallows where *fiſh* may ſport themſelves, do afford Fiſh of the pureſt taſte. And note, that in all Pools it is beſt for Fiſh to have ſome retiring place, as namely hollow banks, or ſhelves, or roots of trees to keep them from danger; and when they think fit from the extreme heat of Summer, as alſo from the extremity of cold in Winter. And note, that if many trees be growing about your Pond, the leaves thereof falling into the water, makes it nautious to the Fiſh, and the Fiſh to be ſo to the eater of it.

'Tis noted that the *Tench* and *Eele* love mud, and the *Carp* loves gravelly ground, and in the hot moneths to feed on graſſe: You are to

cleanse your Pond if you intend either profit or pleasure, once every three or four Years, (especially some Ponds) and then let them lie dry six or twelve moneths, both to kill the water-weeds, as *Water-lillies*, *Candocks*, *Reate* and *Bull-rushes* that breed there; and also that as these die for want of water, so grasse may grow on the Ponds bottom, which *Carps* will eat greedily in all the hot moneths. The letting your Pond drie and sowing Oats in the bottom is also good, for the Fish feed the faster: and being sometime let drie you may observe what kind of Fish either increases or thrives best in that water; for they differ much both in their breeding andfeeding.

Lebault also advises, that if your Ponds be not very large and roomy, that you often feed your Fish by throwing into them chippings of Bread, Curds, Grains, or the entrails of Chickens, or any fowle or beast that you kill to feed your selves; for these afford Fish a great relief. He saies that Frogs and Ducks do much harm, and devour both the Spawne and the young Frie of all Fish, especially of the *Carp*. And I have, besides experience, many testimonies of it. But *Lebault* allows Water-frogs to be good meat, especially in some Moneths, if they be fat: But you are to note, that he is a *French-man*, and we *English* will hardly believe him, though we know frogs are usually eaten in

in his Country: however he adviſes to deſtroy them and King-fiſhers out of your Ponds; and he adviſes, not to ſuffer much ſhooting at wild fowle, for that (he ſaies) affrightens, and harms, and deſtroyes the Fiſh.

Note, that Carps and Tench thrive and breed beſt when no other Fiſh is put with them into the ſame Pond; for all other Fiſh devour their ſpawn, or at leaſt the greateſt part of it. And note, that clods of graſſe throwne into any Pond feed any Carps in Summer; and that garden earth and parſley thrown into a Pond, recovers and refreſhes the ſick fiſh. And note, that when you ſtore your pond, you are to put into it two or three Melters for one Spawner, if you put them into a breeding Pond: but if into a nurſe-pond, or feeding pond, in which they will not breed, then no care is to be taken, whether there be moſt Male or Female Carps.

It is obſerved, that the beſt ponds to breed Carps are thoſe that be ſtonie or ſandy, and are warm, and free from wind, and that are not deep, but have willow-trees and graſſe on their ſides, over which the water does ſometimes flow: and note, that Carps do more uſually breed in marle pits, or pits that have cleane clay bottoms, or in new ponds, or ponds that lie dry a winter ſeaſon, then in old Ponds, that be full of mud and weeds.

Well *Scholer*, I have told you the ſubſtance of

all that either *observation*, or *discourse*, or a diligent *Survey* of *Dubravius* and *Lebault* hath told me. Not that they in their long discourses have not said more, but the most of the rest are so common observations, as if a man should tell a good Arithmetitian, that twice two is four. I will therefore end this discourse, and we will here sit down and rest us.

CHAP. XXI.

Directions for making of a Line, and for the colouring of both Rod and Line.

Pisc. WELL, Scholer, I have held you too long about these *cadis*, and smaller *fish*, and *rivers*, and *Fish-ponds*, and my spirits are almost spent, and so I doubt is your patience; but being we are now almost at *Tottenham*, where I first met you, and where we are to part, I will lose no time, but give you a little direction how to make and order your Lines, and to colour the hair of which you make your lines, for that is very needfull to be known of an Angler; and also how to paint your rod; especially your top, for a right grown top is a choice Commodity, and should be preserved from the water soaking into it, which makes it in

in wet weather to be heavy, and fish ill favouredly, and not true, and also it rots quickly for want of painting: and I think a good top is worth preserving, or I had not taken care to keep a top above twenty years.

But first for your line.

First note, That you are to take care, that your haire be round, and free from galls or scabs, or frets, for a well-chosen, even, clear, round hair, of a kind of glasse-colour, will prove as strong as three uneven scabby hairs, that are ill chosen, and full of galls or unevenness. You shall seldome find a black hair but it is round, but many white are flat and uneven; therefore if you get a lock of right, round, clear, glass colour hair make much of it.

And for making your *Line*, observe this rule, First, let your hair be clean washt ere you go about to twist it: and then chuse not only the cleerest hair for it, but hairs that be of an equall bignesse, for such do usually stretch all together, and not break singly one by one, but all together.

When you have twisted your links lay them in water for a quarter of an hour, at least, and then twist them over again before you tie them into a Line; for those that do not so shall usually find their Lines to have a hair or two shrink, and be shorter then the rest at the first fishing with it, which is so much of the strength

of the Line loſt for want of firſt watering it, and then re-twiſting it; and this is moſt viſible in a ſeven-hair line, one which hath alwayes a black hayre in the middle.

And for dying of your hairs do it thus:

Take a pint of ſtrong Ale, halfe a pound of ſoot, and a little quantity of the juice of *Walnut*-tree leaves, and an equal quantity of Allome, put theſe together into a pot, or pan, or pipkin, and boile them half an hour, and having ſo done let it cool, and being cold, put your hair into it, and there let it lie; it will turn your hair to be a kind of water or glaſs colour, or greeniſh, and the longer you let it lye, the deeper coloured it will be; you might be taught to make mank other colors, but it is to little purpoſe; for doubtleſſe the water or glaſs-coloured haire is the moſt choice and moſt uſeful for an *Angler*; but let it not be too green.

But if you deſire to colour haire greener, then do it thus: Take a quart of ſmall Ale, halfe a pound of Allome, then put theſe into a pan or pipkin, and your haire into it with them, then put it upon a fire and let it boil ſoftly for half an hour, and then take out your haire, and let it dry, and having ſo done, then take a pottle of water, and put into it two handfull of Marygolds, and cover it with a tile, (or what you think fit,) and ſet it againe on the Fire, where it is to boile ſoftly for half an hour, about which

time

time the ſcum will turn yellow, then put into it half a pound of Coperas beaten ſmall, and with it the hair that you intend to colour, then let the hair be boiled ſoftly till half the liquor be waſted, and then let it cool three or four hours with your hair in it: and you are to obſerve, that the more Copperas you put into it, the greener it will be, but doubtleſſe the pale green is beſt: But if you deſire yellow hair, (which is onely good when the weeds rot) then put in the more *Mary-golds*, and abate moſt of the Copperas, or leave it out, and take a little Verdigreece inſtead of it.

This for colouring your hair. And as for painting your Rod, which muſt be in Oil, you muſt firſt make a ſize with glue and water, boiled together, untill the glue be diſſolved, and the ſize of a Lie-colour; then ſtrike your ſize upon the wood with a Briſtle, or a Bruſh or Penſil, whilſt it is hot: that being quite dry, take white Lead, and a little red Lead, and a little cole-black, ſo much as all together will make an aſh-colour; grind theſe all together with Linſeed oile, let it be thick, and lay it thin upon the wood with a Bruſh or Penſil, this do for the ground of any colour to lie upon wood.

For a Green.

Take Pink and Verdigreece, and grind them together in Linſeed-oile, as thick as you can

well grind it, then lay it ſmoothly on with your Bruſh, and drive it thin, once doing for the moſt part will ſerve, if you lay it well, and be ſure your firſt colour be throughly dry before you lay on a ſecond.

Well, Scholer, you now ſee *Tottenham*, and I am weary, and therefore glad that we are ſo near it: and if I were to walk many more daies with you, I could ſtill be telling you more and more of the myſterious Art of Angling: But I will hope for another opportunitie, and then I will acquaint you with many more, both neceſſary and true obſervations concerning fiſh and fiſhing: but now no more, let's turn into yonder Arbour, for it is a clean and cool place.

Venat. 'Tis a fair motion, and I will requite a part of your courteſies with a bottle of *Sack*, *Milk*, *Oranges* and *Sugar*, which all put together, make a drink like *Nectar*, indeed too good for any body but us *Anglers*: and ſo Maſter, here is a full glaſſe to you of that liquor, and when you have pledged me, I will repeat the Verſes which I promiſed you; it is a Copy printed amongſt Sir *Henry Wottons* Verſes, and doubtleſſe made either by him, or by a lover of Angling: Come Maſter, now drink a glaſſe to me, and then I will pledge you, and fall to my repetition; it is a deſcription of ſuch *Country-Recreations* as I have enjoyed ſince I had the happineſſe to fall into your companie.

Qui-

Quivering fears, *heart-tearing* cares,
Anxious ſighs, *untimely* tears,
Flye, flye to Courts,
Flye to fond worldlings ſports,
Where ſtrain'd Sardonick ſmiles are gloſing ſtill,
And grief *is forc'd to* laugh *againſt her will.*
Where mirth's but mummery,
And ſorrows onely real be.

Flye from our Country-paſtimes, flye,
Sad troops of humane miſery,
Come ſerene looks,
Clear as the chriſtal Brooks,
Or the pure azur'd heaven that ſmiles to ſee
The rich attendance on our poverty;
Peace and a ſecure mind,
Which all men ſeek, we onely find.

Abuſed Mortals, *did you know*
Where joy, hearts-eale *and* comforts *grow,*
You'd ſcorne proud Towers,
And ſeek them in theſe Bowers,
Where winds *ſometimes our woods perhaps may* (*ſhake,*
But bluſtring care *could never tempeſt make,*
Nor murmurs ere come nigh us,
Saving of fountains that glide by us.

Here's no fantaſtick Maſk nor Dance,
But of our Kids that friſk and prance;

Nor

Nor warrs *are seen,*
Unlesse upon the green
Two harmlesse Lambs *are butting one the other,*
Which done, both bleating, run each to his mother.
And wounds are never found,
Save what the plough-share gives the ground.

Here are no entrapping baits
To hasten too too hasty fates,
Unlesse it be
The fond credulity
Of silly fish, which (worldling-like) still look
Upon the bait, but never on the hook:
Nor envy, 'nlesse among
The birds for price of their sweet song.

Go, let the diving Negro *seek*
For gems hid in some forlorne creek:
We all pearls scorne,
Save what the dewy morne
Congeals upon each little spire of grasse,
Which careless shepherds beat down as they passe:
And gold ne're here appears,
Save what the yellow Ceres *bears.*

Blest silent groves, oh may you be
For ever mirths best nursery:
May pure contents
For ever pitch their tents

Upon

(mountains,
Upon these downs, these meads, these rocks, these
And Peace still slumber by these purling fountains:
Which we may every year
Meet when we come a fishing here.

Pisc. Trust me (Scholer) I thank you heartily for these Verses, they be choicely good, and doubtless made by a lover of Angling: Come, now, drink a glass to me, and I will requite you with a very good Copie of Verses: it is a Farewell to the vanities of the World, and some say written by Sir *Harry Wotton*, who I told you was an excellent Angler. But let them be writ by whom they will, he that writ them had a brave soul, and must needs be possest with happy thoughts at the time of their composure:

Farewell ye gilded follies, pleasing troubles;
Farewell ye honour'd rags, ye glorious bubbles:
Fame's but a hollow eccho, Gold pure clay;
Honour the darling but of one short day.
Beauty (th' eyes idol) but a damask'd skin;
State but a golden prison, to live in,
And torture free-born minds: imbroydred Trains
Meerly but pageants for proud swelling veins:
And Blood ally'd to Greatnesse is alone
Inherited, not purchas'd, nor our own. *(Birth*
Fame, Honour, Beauty, State, Train, Blood and
Are but the fading Blossoms of the earth.

I

I would be great, *but that the Sun doth ſtill*
Levell his rayes againſt the riſing hill:
I would be high, *but ſee the proudeſt Oak*
Moſt ſubject to the rending Thunder-ſtroak:
I would be rich, *but ſee men (too unkind)*
Dig in the bowels of the richeſt mind:
I would be wiſe, *but that I often ſee*
The Fox ſuſpected, whileſt the Aſs goes free:
I would be fair, *but ſee the fair and proud*
(Like the bright Sun) oft ſetting in a cloud.
I would be poor, *but know the humble graſſe*
Still trampled on by each unworthy Aſſe:
Rich, *hated:* wiſe *ſuſpected:* *ſcorn'd if* poor:
Great, *feard:* fair, *tempted:* high *ſtill envy'd more:*
I have wiſh'd all; but now I wiſh for neither;
Great, high, rich, wiſe, *nor* fair; poor *Ile be rather.*

Would the world now adopt me for her heir,
Would Beauties Queen entitle me the Fair,
Fame ſpeak me Fortunes Minion: *could I vie*
Angels with India, *with a ſpeaking eye*
Commãd bare heads, bow'd knees, ſtrike Juſtice dumb
As well as blind and lame, or give a tongue
To ſtones by Epitaphs: be call'd great Maſter
In the looſe Rhimes of every Poetaſter:
Could I be more then any man that lives,
Great, fair, rich, wiſe in all Superlatives:
Yet I more freely would theſe gifts reſign,
Then ever Fortune would have made them mine,

And

And hold one minute of this holy leasure.
Beyond the riches of this empty pleasure.

Welcome pure thoughts, welcome ye silent Groves,
These guests, these courts my soul most dearly loves:
Now the wing'd people of the skie shall sing
My cheerfull Anthems to the gladsom Spring:
A Pray'r-Book *now shall be my looking-glasse,*
In which I will adore sweet Vertue's face.
Here dwell no hateful looks, no Palace cares,
No broken Vows dwell here, nor pale-fac'd Fears:
Then here I'l sit and sigh my hot loves folly,
And learn t' affect an holy melancholy,
And if Contentment be a stranger then,
I'l ne'r look for it, but in heaven agen.

Vinat. Well Master, these Verses be worthy to keep a room in every mans memory. I thank you for them; and I thank you for your many instructions, which (God willing) I will not forget: and as St. *Austin* in his Confessions (*book* 4. *chap.* 3.) commemorates the kindness of his friend *Verecundus*, for lending him and his companion a *Country-house*, because there they rested themselves from the troubles of the world; so I having had the like advantage, both by your conversation, and the Art you have taught me, ought ever to do the like: for indeed your company and discourse have beene so useful and pleasant, that I may truly say *I have*

have only lived since I enjoyed them, and turned Angler and not before. Nevertheleſſe, here I muſt part with you, here in this now ſad place where I was ſo happy as Firſt to meet you: But I ſhall long for the ninth of *May*, for then I hope again to enjoy your beloved companie at the appointed time and place. And now I wiſh for ſome ſomniferous potion, that might force me to ſleep away the intermitted time, which will paſſe away with me as tediouſly, as it does with men in ſorrow; nevertheleſſe I will make it as ſhort as I can by my *hopes* and *wiſhes*. And my good Maſter, I will not forget the doctrine which you told me *Socrates* taught his ſcholers, *That they ſhould not think to be honoured ſo much for being* Philoſophers, *as to honour* Philoſophie *by their vertuous lives.* You adviſed me to the like concerning *Angling*, and I will endeavour to do ſo, and to live like thoſe many *worthy men* of which you made mention in the former part of your diſcourſe. This is my firme reſolution, and as a pious man adviſed his friend, *That to beget* Mortification *he ſhould frequent* Churches, *and view* Monuments, *and* Charnel-houſes, *and then and there conſider, how many dead bones time had pild up at the gates of death.* So when I would beget *content*, and increaſe confidence in the *Power*, and *wiſdom*, and *Providence* of Almighty God, I will walk the *Meadowes* by ſome gliding ſtream, and there contemplate the *Lillies* that

that take no care, and thoſe very many various little living *creatures* that are not only created, but fed (man knowes not how) by the goodneſſe of the God of *Nature*. This is my purpoſe, and ſo, *Let every thing that hath breath praiſe the Lord.* And let the bleſſing of St. *Peters* Maſter be with mine.

Piſc. And upon all that are lovers of *Vertue*, and all that love to be quiet, and go a *fiſhing*.

Study to be quiet, 1 Theſ. 4. 11.

A SHORT DISCOURSE By way of *POST-SCRIPT*, Touching the LAWES OF ANGLING.

My good Friend,

I Cannot but tender my particular thanks to you, for that you have been pleased by these Editions of your Complete Angler, freely to dispence your dear-bought Experiences to all the lovers of that Art; and have thereby so excellently vindicated the Legality thereof, as to Divine approbation,

that if I should go about to say more in that behalf, it indeed were to light a Candle to the Sun: But since all pleasures (though never so innocent in themselves) lose that stamp, when they are either pursued with inordinate affections, or to the prejudice of another; therefore as to the former, every man ought to endeavour, through a serious consideration of the vanity of worldly contentments, to moderate his affections thereunto, whereby they may be made of excellent use, as some poysons allayed are in Physick: And as to the later, we are to have recourse to the known Laws, ignorance whereof excuseth no man, and by their directions so square our actions, that we hurt no man, but keep close to that golden Rule, To do to all men, as we would our selves be done unto.

Now concerning the Art of Angling, we may conclude, Sir, that as you have proved it to be of great Antiquity, so I find it favoured by the Laws of this Kingdom; for where provision is made by our Statutes primo Elizab. cap. 17. against taking Fish by Nets that be not of such and such a size there set down, yet those Law-makers had so much respect to Anglers, as to except them, and leave them a liberty to catch as big as they could, and as little as they would catch. And yet though this Apostolical Recreation be simply in it self lawful, yet no man can go upon another mans grounds to fish, without his

his licenſe, but that he is a Treſpaſſer; but if a man have licenſe to enter into a Cloſe or Ground for ſuch a ſpace of time, there, though he practiſe Angling all that time, he is not a Treſpaſſer, becauſe his Fiſhing is no abuſe of his licenſe: but this is to be underſtood of Running Streams, and not of Ponds or ſtanding Pools; for in caſe of a Pond or ſtanding Pool, the Owner thereof hath a property in the fiſh, and they are ſo far ſaid to be his, that he may have Treſpaſſe for the fiſh againſt any one that ſhall take them without his licenſe, though it be upon a Common, or adjoyning to the Kings High-way, or adjoyning to another mans ground, who gives licenſe: But in caſe of a River, where one or more have libera piſcaria, only, it is otherwiſe, for there the fiſhes are ſaid to be feræ naturæ, and the taking of them with an Angle is not Treſpaſſe, for that no man is ſaid to have a property in them till he have taught them, and then it is a treſpaſſe for any to take them from him: But this is not to be underſtood of fiſhes confined to a mans own ground by grates or otherwiſe, ſo that they cannot paſſe away, but may be taken out or put in at pleaſure, for in that caſe the party hath a property in them, as in the caſe of a ſtanding Pool.

But where any one hath ſeperalis piſcaria, as in Child and Greenhills Caſe in Trin. 15. Car. 1. in the Kings Bench, Trin. 15. Car. 1.

Bench, there it seemeth that the fish may be sat to be his, because no man else may take them whilest they are within his severall fishing; therefore what is meant by a severall fishing is necessary to be considered: and though the difference between a Free fishing and a Severall fishing be often treated of in the ancient books of the Law, and some Opinions will have the difference to be great, and others small or nothing at all; yet the certainest definition of a several fishing is, where one hath the Royalty, and oweth the ground on each side of the water: which agreeth with Sir William Calthropps Case, where an Action was brought by him against another for fishing in his several fishing, &c. to which the Defendant pleaded, That the place wherein the Trespasse was supposed to be done, contained ten Perches of Land in length, and twenty Perches in breadth, which was his own Free-hold at the time when the Trespasse was supposed to be done, and that he fished there as was lawfull for him to do: and this was adjudged a good Plea by the whole Court, and upon argument in that very Case it was agreed, That no man could have a several fishing but in his own soyl, and that free fishing may be in the soyl of another man, which was all agreed unto by Littleton our famous English Lawyer. So that from all this may be drawn this short conclusion,

Mich. 17.E.4.6. & Pasc.18.E.4.4.

clusion,

clusion, That if the Angler take care that he offend not with his feet, there is no great danger of his hands.

But there are some covetous rigid persons, whose souls hold no sympathy with those of the innocent Anglers, having either got to be Lords of Royalties, or owners of Lands adjoyning to Rivers, do, by some apted clownish nature and education for the purpose, insult and domineer over the innocent Angler, beating him, breaking his Rod, or at least taking it from him, and sometimes imprisoning his person, as if he were a Felon: Whereas a true-bred Gentleman scorns those Spider-like attempts, and will rather refresh a civil Stranger at his Table, than warn him from coming on his ground upon so innocent an occasion. It would therefore be considered how far such furious drivers are warranted by the Law, and what the Angler may (in case of such violence) do in defence of himself; If I come upon another mans ground without his license, or the license of the Law, I am a Trespasser, for which the owner may have an Action of Trespasse against me, and if I continue there after warning to depart by the owner, or his servant thereunto authorised, the owner or his servant by his command, may put me off by force, but not beat me, but in case of resistance by me, for then I (by resisting) make the assault; but if he beat me, I not resisting, in that

case he makes the assault, and I may beat him in defence of my self, and to free my self from his violence: and in case I shall leave my Rod behind in his ground, he may take it damage feasant, but he can neither take it from my person by force, nor break it, but he is a Trespasser to me: Which seems clear by the case of Reynell and Champernoon, where Reynell brought an Action of Trespasse against Champernoon for taking and cutting his Nets, the Defendant justified for that he was seised in fee of a several fishing, and that the Plaintiff with others endeavoured to come upon his water, and with the Nets to catch his fish, and that for the safe-guard of his fishing he took and cut the Nets and Mars; to which plea the Plaintiff demurred; and there it was adjudged by the whole Court, that he could not by such colour cut the Nets and Mars, and judgment was thereupon given for the Plaintiff.

Mich. 7. Car. 1.

Doubtlesse our Fore-fathers well considered, that man to man was a wolf, and therefore made good Lawes to keep us from devouring one another, and amongst the rest a very good Statute was made in the three and fortieth year of Queen Elizabeth, whereby it is provided, that in personal Actions in the Courts at Westminster, (being not for Land or Battery) when it shall appear to the Judges, (and be so by them signified) that the debt or damages to be recovered

vered amount not to the summe of forty shillings or above, the said Judges shall award to the Plaintiff no more costs than damages, but lesse at their discretion.

And now with my acknowledgment of the advantage I have had both by your friendship and your book, I wish nothing that looks like an alteration in the first, nor any thing in the last, but that, by reason of the useful pleasure of it, you had called it The Arcadia of Angling, for it deserves that Title, and I would deserve the continuance of your Friendship.

THE CONTENTS.

Chapter 1.

A *Conference betwixt an* Angler, *a* Falkner, *and a* Hunter, *each commending his Recreation.* p.1

Chap.2. *Observations of the Otter and Chub.* p.47

Chap.3. *How to fish for, and to dress the Chavender or Chub.* p.58

Chap.4. *Observations of the nature and breeding of the Trout, and how to fish for him. And the Milk-maids song.* p.66

Chap.5. *More directions how to fish for, and how to make the Trout an artificial minnow and flye: and some merriment.* p.81

Chap.6. *Observations of the Umber or Grayling, and directions how to fish for them.* p.131

Chap.7. *Observations of the Salmon, with directions how to fish for him.* p.134

Chap.8. *Observations of the Luce or Pike, with directions how to fish for him.* p.143

Chap.9. *Observations of the Carp, with directions how to fish for him.* p.158

Chap.10. *Observations of the Bream, and directions how to fish for him.* p.169

Chap.11. *Observations of the Tench, and advice how to angle for him.* p.178

Chap.12. *Observations of the Pearch, and directions how to fish for him.* p.181

Chap.

Chap. 13. *Observations of the Eele, and other fish that want scales, and how to fish for them.* p. 187
Chap. 14. *Observations of the Barbel, and directions how to fish for him.* p. 197
Chap. 15. *Observations of the Gudgion, the Ruff and the Bleak, and how to fish for them.* p. 203
Chap. 16. *Is of nothing.* p. 206
Chap. 17. *Of Roach and Dace, and how to fish for them. And of Cadis.* p. 217
Chap. 18. *Of the Minnow or Penck, of the Loach, and of the Bull-head or Millers-thumb.* p. 230
Chap. 19. *Of several Rivers, and some observations of fish.* p. 235
Chap. 20. *Of Fish-ponds, and how to order them.* p. 240
Chap. 21. *Directions for making of a Line, and for the colouring of both Rod and Line.* p. 244

THE

THE TABLE.

A

Action better than Contemplation. 27
Adonis. 33
Anwell hill. 3,47
Ant-flye. 220
Angles. 4,5
Angling. 17. a native art. 24. its antiquity. 25
allowed to the Clergy. 4
Anchovis artificial. 205
Aviaries of *Varro*. 11
Ayre exceeds Earth and Water. 8. its neceſſity. 9

B

Baits for a *Chub*. 62,63
Baiting. 94. Ground-bait. 174, 223
Barbell induſtry. 36. ſpawns in *April*. 198. poiſon. 199
luſty and cunning. *ibid*. baits proper for him. 208
roaſted cheeſe. 201
Bees polity. 12
Bleak. 203. the freſh-water Sprat. *ibid*.
Bones of a *Chevin* turn to a griſle. 64
Brandling. 91,92,184. its place. 91. its food. 93
the ſwelling of its knot. 93
Bream. 170,172
Bull-head. 232

C

Cadis. 226
Charr. 196
Primitive Chriſtians. 7
Cantharus. 34
Carps and *Loaches* breed often. 159
Carps love gravel. 141. and Marle-pits. 243
come at the call of a bell. 229
Carps devoured by Frogs. 162
Carps faral day. 166. how to boyl it. 169
Carps proper baits. 166
Cats ſpeak. 6

Carthusians never eat flesh. 49
Caterpiller. 97. description. 100
Cock-spur. 227. *Congre.* 195
Chub dressed. 58
Cuttle-fish. 32

D

Dace. 206,217. its baits. 219
Dare. ibid.
Fr. Davisons song. 123
Dew-worms. 91
Docke maggot. 171
D. *Donnes* Verses. 186
Drag-hook. 191
Dun-flye. 61,97

E

Earths excellencies. 15
Eeles unbed at noise of thunder. 118
Eeles generate like Dew-worms. 188
Eeles breed of a particular dew. ibid.
Eele cakes. 189. alwayes in season. 195
Eeles never return from sea. 189
Eeles catched by powdered beef. 190
Eeles and *Swallows* sleep all winter. ibid.
Eeles digged out of the earth by spades. ibid.
animal viviparum. 191
Eeles hide themselves all day. 192
Eele roasted. 194

F

Falkoner. 4,8,14
Falcon ascends high. 8. understands words. 9
Fence-moneths. 54
Fish dyet commended. 20
Fishermen never upbraided by Christ for their imployment. 37
Fish and Nets under size. 52
Fishes enemies. 53. Fish-ponds: 240
Fish and flesh Frogs. 152
Flyes all sorts. 97,62. artificial twelve sorts. 106

Great

Great Flyes feed upon the leſs. 99
Flie-making art. 110
Flyes twelve kinds. 106,109
Frogs for baits. 185
Frogs mouth ſhut up all winter. 69,153
Water-fox. 218

G

Generation of flyes. 98. all by eggs. *ibid*
Generation of Gentles. 222
Greyhounds properties. 17
Greyling feeds on gold. 132
Greggs. 191. *Guiniad*. 197. *Gudgion*. 203
Grub. 221. *Groundling*.

H

Hampſhire brooks beſt. 128
Hayre-d; ing. 246. black hair round. 245
Hawks commended. 10. ten ſorts of long-winged. 13
four of ſhort-winged. *ib*. ſeven of inferiour ranks. *ib*.
Hawthorn flye. 113
Hens care. 34
Hermit-fiſh. 32
Hodſden. 2
Hunting games commended. 15,16

I

The *Jews* caviare. 264

K

Kings-fiſhers neſt. 224

L

Lamprey, *Lamprell*, *Lampern*. 195
Lamprey lives ſixty years. 190
Leather mouthed fiſh. 62,197,204,218
Larks commendations. 10
Few Lawyers among Chriſtians. 7
Ledget bait. 159
Leat dyet approved. 20
Liverock. 10
Directions for the Line. 145
Line to fiſh withall. 106

Linnet. 10
Loach. 231
Lob-worm. 91,139

N

Dean *Nowel* an Angler. 4
Night-fishing. 117
Nightingales praises. 11

O

Oak-flye. 12. natural. 114
Otter. 3. Otter-dogs. 3,147
Otter-gloves best against wet. 48
A tame *Otter* catches fish. 5

P

Palmer-flye. 106,113
Paste for baits. 64,166,161,171,172,181
Pater noster line. 205
Peawch wholsom. 182. spawns once a year. *ibid.*
Penck. 230
Pike. 143. his boldness. 144. food. 145
Pike eats venemous Frogs *sine damno.* 145
breeds once a year. 147
Pike roasted. 156
No *Pikes* in *Spain.* 159
Pinto. 39
Pismires use. 15
A Poor man has more pleasure in eating than the rich. 105
Piper. 226
Ponds must lye dry a year. 4,241
Pope or *Ruff.* 204. a greedy biter. *ibid.*
Pride. 192

R

Raven fed *Elijah.* 11
Rich men condemned. 5
Rivers of *England.* 235
Rivers differ as pastures. 70
Strange properties of Rivers. 89
Roach. 206

Robin

Robin-red-breſt. 12
Rod for fiſhing. 108
Ruds. 218
Ruff. 203
Ruff-coat. 227

S

Samlet. 67,139
Sargus. 33
Salmon ſpawns in *Auguſt.* 134
Engliſh *Salmon* beſt. 137
Salmon grows as faſt as a *Goſling.* 138
Salmon goes to Sea before Winter. 135
his baits. 139,140
Scoffing how made. 4
Seaſons of fiſh. 218
Spawning time. 53. *Trouts* in *October.* 71
Spawn of the *Chevin* good. 62
Shigling. 193
Stones of the *Pearch.* 182. *Tench.* 179
Water-Swallow. 105. Sheep. 218
Swallow carries Letters between two Armies. 11
ſleeps all Winter. 69,190. returns to the ſame chimney, as *Salmon* to the ſame river. 138
Sheeps bloud a good bait. 213
Straw-worm. 227
Stickle-bag. 223

T

Theobalds. 2
Tench and *Eele* love mud. 241
Tench. 171. deſcription. 179. the *Pikes* Phyſician. 180
Tit-lark. 10
Tottenham hill. 1
Trouts ſeaſon with the *Bucks.* 66,71. ſigns of being in ſeaſon. 72. good. 83
Barren *Trout* good in Winter. 66
Geneva Trouts three cubits long. 67
Fordidge Trout as big as a *Salmon.* 69

T not to be taken with the Angle. ibid.
Trout-lice. 71
Bull-trout. 70
Trout timorous like the Hare. 187
Trouts bait: 234

U

Umber, Trout-kind. 139

W

Wasps made baits. 213
Water first in the generation; 18. comprehends all the other Elements in the cause of all fruitfulness. ibid.
Wheat-bait. 236
Whipping for *Bleaks*. 206
Fine Wool pastures. 136
Worms fit for baits. 62
Worms the several sorts, 91. how to make them appear. 93

Y

Yelvers. 183

Errata.

Plant p.19.l.8. *are* for *have* p.147.

FINIS.